CHURCH LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

J. E. LOWE, M.A.

4/6

CHURCH LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

AN ELEMENTARY COURSE OF EXERCISES IN ECCLESIASTICAL LATIN

BY J. E. LOWE, M.A.

With a Note by CANON BARRY, D.D., *and a Foreword by the Rev.* R. A. KNOX, M.A.

LONDON

BURNS OATES & WASHBOURNE LTD.

28 ORCHARD STREET 8–10 PATERNOSTER ROW

W. 1. E.C. 4

AND . AT . MANCHESTER . BIRMINGHAM . AND . GLASGOW

1930

PA
2823
.L7
1930

First edition . . 1923
Second edition . . 1927
Third edition . . 1930

Made and Printed in Great Britain.

NOTE

By CANON WILLIAM BARRY

I WAS very glad to see in print this little volume, which deals with our Church Latin; and I hope that it will be widely read and studied. The want of such a help has long been evident. Classical or heathen Latin is a beautiful creation of genius; but as a language it is dead. The Latin of Catholic Christendom is a living literature; great portions of it are every day read and recited all over the world, by thousands on thousands of priests, seminarists, religious orders of men and women. But they have never been taught the grammar of it, seldom have learned by reflection how marvellous a transformation it is of a language singularly hard to refashion; yet the miracle stands perfect in their sight. Perfect I call it, and take my position close to such masters of style as Ruskin, Matthew Arnold, and J. A. Symonds, whose hearty recognition of what another has termed "baptized Latin" was enhanced by their Oxford training in the classics. Not a degenerate offspring of Roman speech in decay, but a most original and happy adaptation of the popular idiom to sacred uses, our literature of sanctuary, cloister, and the schools is a world in itself.

Consider all that lies implicit in the single name of St. Jerome's *Latin Vulgate*. Remember St. Augustine's *Confessions*, the supreme example still of religious autobiography. Call to mind the *Summa* written by St. Thomas Aquinas, with its spiritual crown, *The Imitation*. And then launch out into the Liturgies of the West, the Lives of the Saints, the Hymnologies, the inspired prayers which, with all our critical training, we cannot in any way equal. It is a world, I repeat, laying under tribute old Hebrew, Hellenistic Greek, preluding the rise of grand Western romance and poetry, covering the middle space of more than a thousand years between classical and modern times.

The Vulgate and the Liturgy are twin portals by which we enter upon our own domain, as Christians who have received from Papal Rome the inspired word of God in the language best adapted to blend human with divine, while men move on towards peace and unity.

Let us try to know it better, that God-given mother-tongue of ours. It is holy, sublime, and simple, rich in devout associations and full of grace.

LEAMINGTON,
May Day, 1923.

FOREWORD

By the REV. R. A. KNOX, M.A.

There is a story told in one of our Catholic Colleges (and probably in all of them) which throws, it is to be feared, a sinister light upon the easy familiarity with which altar-boys, choirs, and even congregations patter out their ecclesiastical Latin. A boy in Latin class was exhibiting a mulish ignorance as to the meaning of the word *tantus*, and the class master, with that fatal tendency we all have to adopt the method of cross-examination, was trying to get the right meaning out of him. At last in despair he suggested: "Well, you have met the words *Tantum ergo Sacramentum* before; at least you know what *that* means." At which a great light dawned upon the boy, and he said: "Oh, yes, sir, I know *that:* it means 'Down in adoration falling.'" Most Catholic schoolmasters have had similar, if not quite so poignant, experiences.

Well, we all know that it is perfectly possible to "join in" a service without understanding a word of what the priest is saying or what his assistants are answering, since devotion does not depend upon an intellectual formula. And in any case, you can get Latin-and-English-in-parallel-columns editions of all the more important services nowadays, to glut your curiosity as to the meaning of the service if you cannot restrain it. What need, then, for any but priests (in them we naturally expect a certain glibness) to go through all the old grind of terminations, concords, and sequences? Why should we try to interpret as a language what we so willingly submit to as a hieratic rigmarole? Why labour painfully over moods and tenses in the hope that we may one day catch out the curate over a false quantity? Were it not better to stick to our old *mumpsimus?* Kennedy, surely, is a yoke neither we nor our fathers were able to bear.

God forbid that we should try to make devotion into a high-brow exercise. There lives more faith in an honest mumpsimus than in half the gender rhymes, and probably there was more to be said than appears at first sight for the old Protestant lady who

found such comfort in the blessed word Mesopotamia. But there is this much to be said against the mumpsimizers: Church Latin was not meant to mystify. It was meant to express, not to conceal, the emotions and aspirations of the universal Church. Quite true that expression is not absolutely necessary; that a man without Latin can worship at a low Mass, just as a man with no ear for music can worship at a high Mass. But we who have no ear for music (more numerous, perhaps, than the organists imagine us to be) lose something in the way of *rapport* with our fellow-worshippers for lack of do-re-mi-fa; and surely it is equally true that the non-Latinist is apt to feel "out of it" when he hears the whole of Tenebræ without distinguishing one Latin word except (he flatters himself) "Amen." Common worship does demand a common form of expression; and it must be admitted that the English prayers we Catholics hear in Church are—well, they are not so numerous as the Latin ones.

What, then, are we all to go back to *Via Latina?* To watch Balbus building walls, and Cæsar throwing his forces across a bridge, in the hope that we may one day be able to construe *Sursum corda?* That would be going too fast. The schoolboy studies Latin in order that he may be brought into touch, according to his measure, with the life of that old, pagan civilization from which Europe sprang. To him, Balbus and Cæsar must be early intimates. To him, it is vitally important that Balbus built a wall. In building a wall, Balbus was a true Roman; he showed that capacity for engineering, that insistence on military safeguards, that love of permanent structure, that genius for nice delimitation, which are characteristic of his race. It is good that the schoolboy should know these things. It is not of the slightest importance that the altar-boy should know them.

Church Latin is a language by itself. To understand it completely you must begin at the very foundations—the foundations of Balbus' wall. But to have a working knowledge of it, a very much simpler process suffices. The characteristic idiom, which chiefly makes classical Latin hard to us, does not count for much in that Church Latin which is the *lingua franca* of Western Christendom—there is too much translation from, and reminiscence of, Greek and Hebrew originals to leave much impress of Cicero in the build of its sentences. But it is a language. Call it dog-Latin if you will; there remains a proverb which tells us that a living dog is better than a dead lion, and the difference between the dog-Latin of St. Jerome and the lion-Latin of Cicero is the difference between a living and a dead language. (I once

used the words *si fieri potest* to a German priest, and he corrected me, with the blandest of smiles, to *si possibile est*). Once pick up its rather restricted vocabulary (no very severe task for an instructed Catholic) and get the hang of its terminations, and you have passed into your new world already.

It is greatly to be hoped that books like this will not only supply, but create a demand for self-education in Church Latin amongst those Catholics who find that they have leisure for any self-education. The result should be, for the individual, a considerable enrichment of devotional resources, and a quicker grasp of theological language; for the Catholic community (or is this only a dream ?) a " home atmosphere " which will lighten the Sisyphean labours of those who teach Latin in Catholic schools.

OLD HALL,
May, 1923.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE TO FIRST EDITION

It is a matter for regret not only that Latin is not a compulsory subject in all Catholic Secondary Schools, but also that many children leave school without even being able to follow the Ordinary of the Mass or to translate the easiest Latin prayers and hymns.

Every Catholic should feel it a duty to become familiar with the language in which the Church speaks, and it is in the hope that some, at any rate, who have neither the opportunity nor the inclination to make a serious study of Classical Latin, may yet be induced to work through a very simple course of Church Latin, that this little book has been written. It makes no pretence to scholarship; rules, both of Accidence and Syntax, are reduced to a minimum, and much that would be found in any ordinary school Latin book has been omitted. The Exercises are all written for translation from Latin into English; but students are recommended, for practice, to turn their own versions back into the original. In the last thirty or forty Exercises the sentences are, for the most part, taken directly from the Missal or the New Testament, with a few omissions or alterations to avoid difficulties of construction.

I have had constant recourse to *The Catholic's Latin Instructor*, by Father Caswall, especially in the compilation of the vocabularies; and to *An Introduction to Ecclesiastical Latin*, by the Rev. H. P. V. Nunn. This latter work should prove useful to those who wish to pursue further the differences between Classical and Ecclesiastical Latin.

My grateful thanks are due to Father F. H. Drinkwater, without whose constant help and encouragement this book would not have been written.

April, 1923. J. E. L.

A NOTE ON HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

The differences between Latin and English, as outlined in the Introduction, should first be grasped intelligently, rather than memorised. Then the Exercises can be attacked immediately, and grammatical points should be mastered as they occur. If in subsequent Exercises it appears that some point has been forgotten, it can be revised with reference to the Summaries of Accidence and Syntax which follow the Exercises.

In short, the idea of this book is that the language will be learned through translating the Exercises; and the Summaries of Accidence and Syntax are for reference and revision. The teacher is recommended constantly to bear in mind the object of the course, which is not the attainment of an exact knowledge of Latin Grammar, but a real acquaintance with the language used in the Church's liturgy.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Note by Canon William Barry	iii
Foreword by the Rev. R. A. Knox, M.A.	iv
Author's Preface	vii
A Note on How to Use this Book	viii
Introduction:	
the latin language	1
the differences between latin and english	4
pronunciation	5
reading aloud	7
Exercises	8-87
Summary of Accidence	88
Principal Parts of Irregular Verbs in Common Use	106
Summary of Syntax	113
Familiar Latin Prayers and Hymns	123
The Meanings and Derivations of Familiar Catholic Terms	128
Supplementary Exercises	132
Latin-English Vocabulary	156
English-Latin Vocabulary	170
Index	176

CONTENTS OF EXERCISES

Section.	*Exercises.*	*Accidence.*	*Syntax.*	*Page.*
I.	1-2	1st Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of **amo**		8
II.	3-6	1st Declension: Singular	Use of Genitive and Dative cases	9
III.	7-8	1st Declension: Plural	Use of Ablative case	11
IV.	9-10	2nd Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of **moneo**	Use of Adjectives	12
V.	11	**Esse**: Pres. Indic.		13
VI.	12	Present Infinitive Active	Use of Prolate Infinitive	14
VII.	13	**Possum**: Pres. Indic.		14
VIII.	14	2nd Declension: Nouns in **-us**, Singular		15
IX.	15	2nd Declension: Nouns in **-us**, Plural		16
X.	16-17		Gender of Nouns	16
XI.	18-19	2nd Declension: Nouns in **-er**		18
XII.	20-21	2nd Declension: Nouns in **-um**		19
XIII.	22-25		Use of Prepositions	21
XIV.	26-28	3rd Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of **rego**		23
XV.	29-30	4th Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of **audio**		24
XVI.	31	Imperative Mood		26
XVII.	32-34	Future Tense of **amo, moneo, rego, audio,** and **sum**		26
XVIII.	35-36	Imperfect Tense of **amo, moneo, rego, audio,** and **sum**	Use of **cum** (enclitic)	28
XIX.	37-41	3rd Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns		30
XX.	42-44	3rd Declension: Neuter Nouns		33
XXI.	45-47	3rd Declension: Adjectives		35
XXII.	48	4th Declension		38

Section.	*Exercises.*	*Accidence.*	*Syntax.*	*Page.*
XXIII.	49–50	5th Declension		39
XXIV.	51–52	Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses Act. of **amo, moneo,** and **esse**		41
XXV.	53	Future-Perfect Act. of **amo, moneo,** and **esse**		42
XXVI.	54	Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Act. of **rego**		43
XXVII.	55	Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Act. of **audio**		44
XXVIII.	56–57	Verbs with Irregular Perfect stems		45
XXIX.	58	Present Passive of **amo** and **moneo**		46
XXX.	59	Present Passive of **rego** and **audio**		47
XXXI.	60	Imperfect Passive (all Conj.)		48
XXXII.	61	Future Passive (all Conj.)		49
XXXIII.	62–63	Comparison of Adjectives	Use of **quam** in comparison; Ablative of Comparison	50
XXXIV.	64	Past Participles and Perfect Pass. Tense of **amo** and **moneo**		52
XXXV.	65	Future-Perf. and Pluperf. Pass. of **amo** and **moneo**		53
XXXVI.	66	Past Participles of 3rd and 4th Conjugations, and Perf., Fut.-Perf., and Pluperf. Tenses		54
XXXVII.	67-68	Personal and Reflexive Pronouns: **ego, tu, se,** and **is, ea, id**	Use of Pronouns	55
XXXVIII.	69	Demonstrative Pronouns: **hic**	Use of **hic**	57
XXXIX.	70	Demonstrative Pronouns: **ille**	Use of **ille**	58
XL.	71	Present Participles	Use of Pres. Participles	59
XLI.	72	Future Participles	Use of Future Participles	59
XLII.	73	3rd Conjugation Verbs in **-io**		60
XLIII.	74		Prohibitions: **noli** with Infinitive	62

Section.	*Exercises.*	*Accidence.*	*Syntax.*	*Page.*
XLIV.	75	Deponent and Semi-Deponent verbs	Use of Deponent verbs	62
XLV.	76	Pres. Infinitive and Imperative Passive		64
XLVI.	77	Relative Pronoun: **qui**	Use of Relative	65
XLVII.	78	**Eo**, and compounds of **eo**		66
XLVIII.	79	Pres. Subjunctive, Act. and Pass. (all Conj.)	Use of Pres. Subj. in Jussive and Optative clauses	68
XLIX.	80	The Pronoun **ipse**	Use of **ipse**	69
L.	81–82	Imperfect Subjunctive, Act. and Pass. (all Conj.)		70
LI.	83–84		The Ablative Absolute	72
LII.	85–86	Pluperf. Subjunctive, Act. and Pass. (all Conj.)	Use of **cum**, *when*, with Subj. Unfulfilled Conditions	73
LIII.	87–88	Perf. Subjunctive	Indirect Questions, Prohibitions, **ne** with Perf. Subj.	75
LIV.	89–90	Pres. Perf. and Fut. Infinitives, Act. and Pass.	Indirect Statement: Acc. and Infinitive Construction	77
LV.	91–92		Questions: **nonne**, **num**	79
LVI.	93		Time	80
LVII.	94		Use of Gerund	81
LVIII.	95		Use of Gerundive	82
LIX.	96		Use of Gerund and Gerundive with **esse**	83
LX.	97–100		Use of Supine	84

CHURCH LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

INTRODUCTION

THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

1. THERE was once a language called **Indo-European.*** It is now lost; but we know more or less what it was like from a comparison of the daughter languages of which Indo-European was the mother. Two of these languages were **Greek** and **Latin,** which exhibit as many curious similarities and differences as we should expect to find between two sisters.†

2. **Latin** was the language spoken by the **Latins,** who were the inhabitants of **Latium,** a province of Italy of which **Rome** was the capital. In very early days Italy was made up of several different states, which were always at war with one another; each state spoke its own dialect or *patois*. Gradually the Romans gained the upper hand in Italy, and imposed the Roman or Latin dialect upon the tribes they conquered. Thus Latin became the language of all Italy, and finally of the Roman provinces, such as Gaul, Spain, Africa, and Asia Minor.

3. In its early stages the Latin language was heavy, clumsy, and uncouth. There are some curious examples of this old Latin (it is called **prisca latínitas**) still to be seen on ancient statues, tombstones, etc. Greece was far ahead of Italy in learning and culture.

4. About the middle of the third century B.C., a Greek named **Lívius Andronícus** was taken prisoner in war, and brought to Rome to act as tutor to the children of some of the leading men there. This Livius Andronicus, although he was a Greek, was the first to attempt any serious composition in Latin. He trans-

* Also known as Indo-Germanic and Aryan.

† For example, where Latin has an initial **s**, Greek has an aspirated vowel—*e.g.*, the Latin for *six* is **sex**, the Greek, ἕξ (*hex*); *cf.* English *sextant* and *hexagon*. Again, where Latin has the voiced labial (**b**), Greek has the unvoiced (**p**): thus, Latin **sub** (*under*) = Greek ὑπό (*hupo*); Latin **expello** (*expel*) = Greek ἐκβάλλω (*ekballo*), etc.

lated several plays from the Greek, as well as the Homeric poem, the *Odyssey*.

5. Under the influence of Andronicus, **a literary circle** was formed at Rome, and gradually plays, poems, and prose works were produced in Latin, but always modelled on Greek originals.* In the hands of this literary circle the Latin language soon became less clumsy and uncouth, as each new writer aimed at greater refinement and polish. But the mass of the Roman people cared more about fighting and farming than about literature, and continued to speak the old rough Latin.

6. Thus it came about that from the time of Livius Andronicus, two kinds of Latin existed side by side: the Latin of the literary and cultured classes, called **sermo urbánus,** or the language of the town, and the Latin of the ordinary people, called **sermo vulgáris.**

7. The first century B.C. is known as the **Golden Age of Latin Literature.** In this period **Cicero,** orator, statesman and philosopher, brought literary Latin to its zenith, and developed a prose style which became at once the envy and despair of all subsequent Latin authors. No writing, either before or since, has had such a powerful and lasting influence upon the prose style of the literature of Western Europe. The greatest poet of the Golden Age was **Vergil,** author of the *Aeneid*, an epic poem which became the Bible, as it were, of the pagan Romans. To this age belong, also, the poets **Horace, Propertius,** and **Ovid,** the historian **Livy,** and the famous general **Julius Caesar,** who has left us Commentaries on his two great wars.

8. The Golden Age, which ended, roughly, with the death of the Emperor Augustus in A.D. 14, gave place to what is known as the **Silver Age.** In this period the literature lacked both deep feeling and spontaneity; style developed at the expense of matter, and a brilliant artificiality replaced the purity of the Golden Age.

9. By the second century a new influence had crept in: it had become fashionable to talk Greek. Even the children of the upper classes learnt to chatter it with their Greek nurses. Thus literary Latin began to die out, though the mass of the people still continued to use the **sermo vulgáris.**

10. It is this **sermo vulgáris** which finally **developed into the different European dialects** which we now call Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Roumanian, and so on. For example, the literary Latin word for a horse is **equus**; but the common word was

* Satire was the only kind of writing which was essentially a Roman production.

cabállus, from which we get *caballo* in Spanish, *cavallo* in Italian and Portuguese, *cheval* in French, *cal* in Roumanian, and such derivatives as *cavalry, cavalier, cavalcade,* etc., in English. These different dialects were known as the Romance (or Roman) languages, and a romance was originally merely a story written in one of these dialects.

11. The language of the early Church was Greek; thus we find that the New Testament and the writings of the Apostolic Fathers were all in Greek and not Latin. It is in Africa that **Ecclesiastical or Church Latin** first developed. The inhabitants of that country had learnt to speak the **sermo vulgáris,** or common Latin; they did not understand Greek. About A.D. 160 **Tertullian** was born at Carthage, and was converted to Christianity about the year 197. He first wrote in Greek, but soon abandoned it in favour of Latin, in order that he might be understood by the common people. His Latin is a mixture of the literary Latin, which was taught in the schools, and the **sermo vulgáris.** He coined a great many new words.

12. By the third century a **Latin translation of the Bible** was in circulation, and St. Augustine tells us that everybody who possessed a Greek manuscript tried his hand at turning it into Latin. Thus the need for one authoritative Latin version became imperative.

13. Towards the end of the fourth century Pope Damasus commissioned **St. Jerome,** the leading scholar of the day, to bring out a new Latin edition of the Bible. This was the famous **Vulgate,** which was finished in the year 405. It marked the end of ancient Latin, and the complete establishment of mediæval Latin. From this time onward Latin became the universal language not only of the Church, but also of the State. Scholars of all nationalities could meet and converse without difficulty, since in Latin they had a common language. Thus we find, for example, Erasmus coming to England at the beginning of the sixteenth century, and finding a place at once in the friendship of such men as More, Colet, Grocin, and Charnock, though he knew no word of English.*

14. The Latin which is taught in schools to-day is the literary Latin of the Golden Age: we call it **Classical Latin.** Ecclesiastical Latin differs from it chiefly in being much nearer to the **sermo vulgáris,** and is, therefore, not so artificially refined and polished

* Erasmus held the living of Aldington in Kent, but resigned it in 1512 because he could not discharge the duties of a parish priest, owing to his inability to speak the language.

as the **sermo urbánus.** But by the end of the fifth century "the Latin speech that was rhetorical, unsympathetic, and hard, had been softened by emotion, lifted on the wings of prophecy, made something with a soul in it, and a sacred tongue."*

15. The chief writers of Ecclesiastical Latin are **Tertullian** (second century), **St. Cyprian** (third century), **Lactantius** and **St. Ambrose** (fourth century), **St. Jerome, St. Augustine,** and **St. Leo the Great** (fifth century), **St. Gregory the Great** (sixth century), the **Venerable Bede** (eighth century), **St. Bernard** (twelfth century), **St. Thomas Aquinas** (thirteenth century), and **Thomas à Kempis** (fifteenth century).

THE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN LATIN AND ENGLISH.

1. Latin is **an inflected language. Inflection** means bending, and most Latin words bend about at the end, and change. This alteration in the ending of a word shows us, for example, the "**case**" of a noun, pronoun, or adjective, and the voice, mood, tense, number, and person of a verb.

2. There are six cases in Latin: the **Nominative,** or subject case; the **Vocative,** or case of a person addressed; the **Accusative,** or Objective case; the **Genitive,** or Possessive case; the **Dative,** or case of the indirect object; and the **Ablative** case, which answers the questions *where? whence?* and *wherewith?*

3. A Latin noun, then, has different endings to show its cases. Thus **terra** is Nominative, **terram** Accusative, **terrae** Genitive, and so on. The six inflections of a noun are called the **Declension** of the noun. There are five Declensions in Latin—that is, five sorts of nouns; every noun must have one of five different sets of endings.

4. In English we show the case of a noun by its position in the sentence. Thus we know whether the dog bit the cat, or the cat bit the dog, by the position of the words "dog" and "cat" in relation to the verb. In Latin **the order does not affect the case,** which is merely shown by the ending. Thus in **terram regit rex,** *the king rules the land,* **terram** is the object, although it stands at the beginning of the sentence. (The verb usually comes at the end of a clause in Latin.)

5. Verbs also are inflected, and there are four **Conjugations,** or ways of inflecting verbs, just as there are in French. In conjugating a verb the personal pronouns "I," "thou," "he," etc.,

* Canon Barry, "The Holy Latin Tongue," *The Dublin Review,* April, 1906.

are omitted, the ending of the verb being a sufficient indication of the person and number.

6. Latin is **a very brief and concise language,** and never makes use of unnecessary words. There is no word at all for "the" or "a," and the possessive adjectives "his," "her," "its," and "their" are very often omitted, as well as the nominative personal pronoun with the verb. In translating Latin into English it is generally necessary to use more words than there are in the original in order to bring out the full meaning. Latin has a very small vocabulary, and often one Latin word may be rendered by a number of English ones which differ very slightly in their shades of meaning. Again, in Latin there is often only one way of saying something, while in English there are several. Thus, we can say "I love," "I am loving," or "I do love," in our present tense: Latin can only say **amo.**

7. In English, if we want to emphasize any word, we usually have to underline it or print it in italics; in Latin **the emphatic word** is often placed at the beginning or end of the sentence, or next to some contrasting word. Thus, where St. Peter says to Our Lord, "Lord, dost Thou wash my feet?" to get the proper emphasis in English we have to stress "Thou" and "my." In Latin these two words are put first: **"Dómine, tu mihi lavas pedes?"**

8. The **Gender** of nouns in Latin is confusing at first, though the difficulty is more apparent when translating from English into Latin, which is beyond the scope of this book. In Latin all male people are masculine, and female feminine; but inanimate things may be masculine, feminine, or neuter. As a general rule, 1st and 5th Declension nouns are feminine, 2nd and 4th masculine, while those of the 3rd Declension vary in gender.

PRONUNCIATION.

In the following rules the Italian method of pronunciation is adopted.

Vowels.

With the exception of the diphthongs, **ae, oe, au,** every vowel is pronounced; a terminal **e** is never mute, as in English, but forms a separate syllable. The vowels in Latin may be long or short; the actual sound is the same, but the short vowel is said more lightly.

a is pronounced as the English **a** in **ăhă.**
e is pronounced as the French **é.**
i is pronounced as in French (English **ee** when long ; **i,** as in *pit,* when short).
o is pronounced as in French, when long. The short **o** in Latin has more the sound of the English **o** in **not.**
u is pronounced as the English **u** in **pull,** when short. When long, it is like the French **ou** (English **oo**).

Diphthongs.

ae and **oe** are both pronounced as the English **ay** in **may.**
au is pronounced as the English **ow** in **now.**

Consonants.

Every consonant is sounded, as in English. The consonants **k** and **w** are not used in Latin.

c is pronounced as **k** before **a, o, u, au,** and **h.**
e.g., *carus, cor, cura, causa, charta.*
c is pronounced as **ch** in **cherry** before **e, i, ae,** and **oe.**
e.g., *cedo, circum, caecus, coelum.*
g is pronounced as **g** in **gate** before **a, o, u,** and **au.**
e.g., *gallus, gomphus, guttur, gaudeo.*
g is pronounced as **j** in **journey** before **e, i,** and **ae.**
e.g., *gens, gigno, gaesum.*
gn is pronounced as **ni** in **union.**
e.g., *magnus.*
j is pronounced as **y** in **youth.***
e.g., *justus.*
sc is pronounced as **sc** in **scatter** before **a, o, u,** and **h.**
e.g., *scala, scópulus, scutum, schola.*
sc is pronounced as **sh** in **show** before **e, i,** and **ae.**
e.g., *descéndo, scimus, scaena.*
ti when followed by a vowel is pronounced **tsi.**
e.g., *gratia, laudatio.*
h is not sounded.

N.B.—An accent (′) is placed on all the Latin words of more than two syllables in this book, to show where to lay the stress of the voice. In the Vocabulary at the end the actual quantity

* Some editors of Latin texts prefer to eliminate the letter **j**, and to replace it by **i**. For the sake of clearness **j** is used throughout this book.

is marked when the vowel is long : *e.g.*, **Māter.** The Ablative case of the 1st Declension is distinguished from the Nominative by a circumflex accent: e.g., **aquâ.** The final **-e** of Adverbs, when long, is so marked: *e.g.*, **dignē.**

READING ALOUD.

It is an excellent practice, especially at the beginning of the course, frequently to read aloud passages of some length from the Missal, the Breviary, the "Imitation," or the New Testament. The meaning of the passages may not be understood; but reading aloud is the best way of familiarising pupils with the pronunciation and spelling of Latin; and, further, they gain from it an indefinable insight into the beauty, spirit, and construction of the language. Great care should be taken to ensure correct pronunciation, accent, and quantity.

SECTION I.

First Conjugation : AMÁRE, to love.

Present Tense.

amo	I love, *or* I am loving	**non amo**	I do not love
amas*	thou lovest, *or* thou art loving	**non amas**	thou dost not love
amat	he loves, *or* he is loving	**non amat**	he does not love
amámus	we love, *or* we are loving	**non amámus**	we do not love
amátis	you love, *or* you are loving	**non amátis**	you do not love
amant	they love, *or* they are loving	**non amant**	they do not love

EXERCISE I.

Vocabulary.

laudáre, to praise.	**liberáre**, to deliver.
adoráre, to adore.	**oráre**, to pray.
culpáre, to blame.	**vocáre**, to call.
speráre, to hope.	**regnáre**, to reign.

1. Laudámus. 2. Vocátis. 3. Líberat. 4. Non culpat. 5. Orámus. 6. Culpas. 7. Non laudo. 8. Sperátis. 9. Vocámus. 10. Regnat. 11. Orátis. 12. Adóras. 13. Liberátis. 14. Non laudat. 15. Spero. 16. Regnant. 17. Non culpámus. 18. Non orat. 19. Adórant. 20. Non sperant.

EXERCISE II.

Vocabulary.

regína, a queen.	**ancílla**, a handmaid.
fémina, a woman.	**puélla**, a girl.

1. Regína laudat. 2. Ancílla adórat. 3. Puélla culpat. 4. Fémina sperat. 5. Regína non sperat. 6. Fémina non vocat. 7. Regína regnat. 8. Fémina culpat. 9. Ancílla orat. 10. Regína líberat. 11. Regnámus. 12. Ancílla non laudat. 13. Liberámus. 14. Culpant. 15. Puélla vocat. 16. Adórant. 17. Fémina non sperat. 18. Culpátis. 19. Non sperámus. 20. Puélla orat.

* The 2nd person singular is always used when addressing one person, no matter what his rank.

SECTION II.

First Declension : Singular.

ROSA, a rose.

Nominative case	rosa	a (*or* the) rose (*subject*)
Vocative case	rosa	O rose
Accusative case	rosam	a rose (*object*)
Genitive case	rosae	of a rose
Dative case	rosae	to *or* for a rose
Ablative case	rosâ	by, with, *or* from a rose

EXERCISE III.

VOCABULARY.

fília, a daughter.
María, Mary.
pátria, native land.
et, and.
vita, life.
epístola,* a letter.
saepe (*adverb*), often.
semper (*adverb*), always.

I. Regína laudat epístolam. 2. Regína non amat féminam. 3. Ancílla amat puéllam. 4. Regína líberat puéllam. 5. Puélla amat Maríam. 6. Semper amámus pátriam. 7. Fília amat féminam. 8. Ancílla et puélla laudant regínam. 9. Semper amámus vitam. 10. Regína saepe laudat ancíllam. 11. Puélla saepe orat. 12. Ancílla non laudat epístolam. 13. Fémina semper laudat fíliam. 14. Puélla et fémina amant rosam. 15. Regína líberat puéllam et ancíllam. 16. Laudámus regínam. 17. Regína saepe orat. 18. Adorámus. 19. Fémina amat pátriam. 20. Regína saepe laudat féminam et puéllam.

EXERCISE IV.

VOCABULARY.

quis ? who ?
cur ? why ?
quia, because.
sed, but.

1. Non amo regínam quia culpat puéllam. 2. Quis amat vitam ? 3. Cur culpas ancíllam ? 4. Laudo puéllam quia amat pátriam. 5. Amámus féminam et puéllam. 6. Quis culpat ancíllam ? 7. Regína culpat puéllam. 8. Culpámus ancíllam sed laudámus puéllam. 9. Fémina non amat regínam quia culpat fíliam. 10. Cur non laudas epístolam ? 11. Laudámus puéllam

* Sometimes, but not so correctly, written epistula.

et ancíllam. 12. Fémina et fília orant. 13. Semper laudámus Maríam. 14. Cur non laudas puéllam? 15. Regína líberat puéllam et ancíllam. 16. Cur non sperant? 17. Semper adorámus. 18. Quis amat rosam? 19. Regína regnat. 20. Saepe laudámus ancíllam.

EXERCISE V.

(Genitive Case.)

VOCABULARY.

terra, the earth, land.	**hora**, an hour.
cujus? whose?	**stella**, a star.
glória, glory.	**coróna**, a crown.

1. Hora vitae. 2. Fília regínae. 3. Glória Maríae. 4. Ancílla regínae. 5. Fília féminae amat ancíllam regínae. 6. Cujus epístolam laudas? 7. Laudo epístolam puéllae, sed culpo epístolam ancíllae. 8. Laudámus glóriam stellae. 9. Quis non laudat vitam Maríae? 10. Fília regínae líberat féminam. 11. Non laudo fíliam féminae. 12. Cur culpas ancíllam regínae? 13. Quis vitam regínae laudat? 14. Puélla laudat corónam regínae. 15. Non amámus féminam et ancíllam. 16. Non saepe culpámus ancíllam. 17. Quis culpat puéllam? 18. Regína líberat fíliam féminae. 19. Semper laudámus rosam. 20. Fémina et puélla sperant.

EXERCISE VI.

(Dative Case.)

VOCABULARY.

monstráre, to point out.	**dare**, to give.
narráre, to narrate, tell.	**fábula**, a story.

1. Fémina narrat fábulam fíliae. 2. Puélla dat rosam regínae. 3. Ancílla monstrat stellam féminae. 4. Damus corónam regínae. 5. Regína dat epístolam puéllae. 6. Fília regínae narrat fábulam puéllae. 7. Regína dat epístolam féminae. 8. Cujus vitam laudas? Semper laudo vitam Maríae. 9. Fémina monstrat stellam fíliae regínae. 10. Regína semper laudat fíliam féminae, sed saepe culpat ancíllam. 11. Semper laudámus glóriam Maríae. 12. Amo regínam quia laudat fíliam. 13. Cujus fábulam laudas? 14. Laudo fábulam féminae. 15. Quis monstrat stellam puéllae? 16. Cujus epístolam das ancíllae? 17. Cur non speras? 18. Damus corónam regínae. 19. Regína saepe orat. 20. Non culpo puéllam.

SECTION III.

First Declension : Plural.

Nominative case	**rosae**	roses (*subject*)
Vocative case	**rosae**	O roses
Accusative case	**rosas**	roses (*object*)
Genitive case	**rosárum**	of roses
Dative case..	**rosis**	to *or* for roses
Ablative case	**rosis**	by, with, *or* from roses

N.B.—The dative and ablative plural of **filia**=**filiabus**, similarly **anima, animabus ; dea, deabus.**

EXERCISE VII.

VOCABULARY.

ornáre, to adorn. **nuntiáre**, to announce.
via, a way, road. **aqua**, water.

N.B.—In Latin the verb is often placed at the end of a sentence.

1. Puéllae regínam amant. 2. Ancíllae stellas monstrant. 3. Puéllae laudant fílias regínae. 4. Quis monstrat stellas regínae ? 5. Ornámus fíliam regínae. 6. Fíliae regínae fábulas narrant. 7. Saepe laudámus fílias féminae. 8. Puéllae vitam amant. 9. Puéllae dant rosas féminis. 10. Ancíllae núntiant. 11. Ancíllae reginárum stellas puéllis monstrant. 12. Fábulas saepe narrámus. 13. Regína rosas féminae dat. 14. Semper laudámus glóriam Maríae. 15. Puéllae monstrant aquam et terram fíliae regínae. 16. Quis culpat epístolas puellárum ? 17. Semper amámus pátriam. 18. Puélla narrat fábulam féminis. 19. Regína laudat rosas puellárum. 20. Fémina monstrat viam puéllis.

EXERCISE VIII.

(Ablative Case.)

VOCABULARY.

adjuváre, to help. **pecúnia**, money.

1. Fíliae ornant regínam rosis. 2. Fémina ádjuvat puéllam pecúniâ. 3. Fémina pecúniam ancíllae dat. 4. Puélla monstrat viam féminae. 5. Ancíllae ornant fílias regínae corónâ et rosis. 6. Fémina monstrat aquam et terram puéllis. 7. Regína dat pecúniam ancíllis. 8. Fémina puéllam pecúniâ saepe ádjuvat.

9. Cujus rosas laudas? 10. Quis ádjuvat puéllam? 11. Ancíllae narrant fábulas puéllis. 12. Fília regínae líberat ancíllam pecúniâ. 13. Quis ádjuvat féminam? 14. Quis monstrat viam féminis? 15. Laudámus corónam stellárum. 16. Epístolam puéllae culpámus, sed fábulam ancíllae laudámus. 17. Puéllae monstrant stellas et aquas. 18. Laudámus horas vitae. 19. Quis non laudat epístolas filiárum regínae? 20. Fíliae féminae saepe culpant epístolas filiárum regínae.

SECTION IV.

Second Conjugation: MONÉRE, to advise, *or* warn.

Present Tense.

moneo	I advise (*or* am advising)
mones	thou advisest
monet	he advises
monémus	we advise
monétis	you advise
monent	they advise

EXERCISE IX.

VOCABULARY.

tenére, to hold.	**docére**, to teach.
habére, to have.	**vidére**, to see.
timére, to fear.	**terrére**, to terrify.

1. Puélla tenet epístolam. 2. Fíliae regínae docent ancíllas. 3. Non vídeo terram, sed vídeo aquam et stellas. 4. Ancíllae regínam timent. 5. Habémus rosas et corónas. 6. María habet corónam stellárum. 7. Quis videt viam? 8. Regína terret ancíllas et puéllas. 9. Tenémus epístolam regínae. 10. Quis habet corónam? 11. Féminae terrent puéllas. 12. Regínam saepe timémus. 13. Ancílla monstrat viam regínae. 14. Regína monet féminam. 15. Quis docet puéllam? 16. Fília regínae docet puéllam. 17. Regínam et fíliam saepe vidémus. 18. Regína habet corónam rosárum. 19. Fíliae regínae terrent puéllas et ancíllas. 20. Quis videt regínam?

EXERCISE X.

VOCABULARY.

magna, great, mighty.	**longa**, long.
bona, good.	**parva**, small, little.
mala, bad.	**laeta**, joyful, glad.

N.B.—In Latin the Adjective is usually placed after the noun, and it must agree with it in number, gender, and case.

1. Regína magna puéllas bonas laudat. 2. Puéllae parvae timent regínam magnam. 3. Fémina bona docet ancíllam parvam. 4. Non habémus vitam longam. 5. Fémina mala terret puéllas parvas. 6. Regína magna laudat puéllas laetas. 7. Quis laudat puéllas malas? 8. Fémina monstrat viam longam. 9. Non tímeo regínam magnam. 10. Fémina bona docet fílias parvas regínae magnae. 11. Ancíllae laetae pátriam vident. 12. Fémina narrat fábulam longam. 13. Puélla parva stellas monstrat. 14. Ancíllae bonae orant et sperant. 15. Regína bona puéllas parvas pecúniâ ádjuvat. 16. Puéllae parvae ornant regínam magnam rosis. 17. Quis líberat ancíllam bonam? 18. Quis non laudat puéllas bonas? 19. Docémus fílias parvas regínae magnae. 20. Puéllae laetae regínam magnam vident.

SECTION V.

The Verb ESSE, to be.

Present Tense.

sum	I am	**sumus**	we are
es	thou art	**estis**	you are
est	he is	**sunt**	they are

N.B.—The verb *to be* is followed by the Nominative Case in Latin, as in English.

EXERCISE XI.

1. Regína est bona. 2. Regínae sunt magnae. 3. Puéllae sunt parvae. 4. Féminae sunt bonae. 5. Ancílla est laeta. 6. Sumus ancíllae regínae. 7. Quis dat rosam regínae? 8. Puéllae sunt ancíllae Maríae. 9. Bona et laeta es. 10. Vita non est longa. 11. Pátria est magna. 12. Glória Maríae est magna. 13. Horae vitae non sunt longae. 14. Fémina bona stellas puéllis parvis monstrat. 15. Via est longa et aquae sunt magnae.

16. Fíliae regínae sunt ancíllae Maríae. 17. Estis bonae et laetae. 18. Non timémus regínam magnam. 19. Puélla est bona sed parva. 20. Quis docet fíliam regínae ?

SECTION VI.

The Use of the Present Infinitive.

The Present Infinitive is used in Latin, as in English, to complete the sense of a verb: *e.g.*, **debémus oráre,** *we ought to pray.*

EXERCISE XII.

VOCABULARY.

audére, to dare.	**debére,** ought.
jubére, to order.	**vult,** he (*or* she) wishes.

1. Debémus speráre. 2. Regína jubet ancíllas oráre. 3. Quis non audet speráre ? 4. Regína vult vidére ancíllas. 5. Puéllae non audent docére fílias regínae. 6. Cur times vidére regínam ? 7. Debémus amáre regínam. 8. Regína debet monére féminam. 9. Fémina bona non audet culpáre regínam magnam. 10. Puélla vult stellas vidére. 11. Fémina jubet ancíllam narráre fábulam. 12. Fémina vult monstráre viam regínae. 13. Cur timétis adjuváre ancíllam ? 14. Puélla parva aquam timet. 15. Fémina mala terret fílias regínae. 16. Fília regínae non audet liberáre ancíllas. 17. Ancíllae corónam regínae dant. 18. Regína jubet ancíllas puéllam adjuváre. 19. Puéllae malae audent culpáre fíliam féminae. 20. Puélla vult adjuváre féminam.

SECTION VII.

The Verb POSSE, to be able.

Posse is a compound of **esse,** *to be,* and was originally written **potesse,** being made up of the adjective **potis,** *able,* and **esse,** *to be :* hence *to be able.* Wherever the verb **esse** begins with an **s,** as in **sum, pos-** is written instead of **pot- : *e.g.*, possum,** not **potsum. Posse** is followed by the Infinitive.

Present Tense.

possum, I can, *or* I am able	**póssumus,** we can, *or* we are able
potes, thou canst, *or* thou art able	**potéstis,** you can, *or* you are able
potest, he can, *or* he is able	**possunt,** they can, *or* they are able

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Non possum vidére. 2. Potes oráre. 3. Quis potest monére féminam? 4. Non possum fábulas narráre. 5. Quis potest vidére terram? 6. Regína magna ancíllas liberáre potest. 7. Fémina non potest vocáre puéllas. 8. Cur culpas puéllas? 9. Culpo puéllas quia non possunt monstráre viam regínae. 10. Quis potest ancíllam liberáre? 11. Stellas vidére póssumus. 12. Quis non potest speráre? 13. Fília féminae non potest narráre fábulas longas. 14. Fémina non potest monére puéllas. 15. Puéllae malae audent culpáre regínam. 16. Quis vocat fílias regínae? 17. Regína jubet fílias féminae viam monstráre. 18. Puéllae parvae non possunt adjuváre féminam. 19. Quis aquam timet? 20. Cur non potes monére féminam?

SECTION VIII.

Second Declension: Singular.

ÓCULUS, an eye.

Nominative case	óculus	an eye (*subject*)
Vocative case	ócule	O eye
Accusative case	óculum	an eye (*object*)
Genitive case	óculi	of an eye
Dative case	óculo	to *or* for an eye
Ablative case	óculo	by, with, *or* from an eye

EXERCISE XIV.

VOCABULARY.

Dóminus, the Lord.
Deus, God (*Vocative*, **Deus**).
Christus, Christ.
Agnus, Lamb.
ángelus, an angel.
fílius, a son (*Vocative*, **fili**).
mundus, the world.
servus, a servant, slave.

1. Christum adorámus. 2. Ángelus adórat Agnum Dei. 3. Deus amat mundum. 4. Ángelus Dei núntiat Maríae. 5. Servus et ancílla Dóminum amant. 6. Fíliae regínae, ancíllae Maríae, Deum adórant. 7. Fílius regínae Dóminum timet. 8. María est ancílla Dómini. 9. Deus líberat mundum. 10. Quis Deum non amat? 11. Adorámus Christum, Fílium Dei. 12. Glória Dei est magna. 13. Angelus Deum potest vidére. 14. Deum timére debémus. 15. Fílius regínae servum terret.

16. Dóminus jubet ángelum nuntiáre Maríae. 17. Debémus amáre pátriam. 18. Christus mundum liberáre potest. 19. Christus est Fílius Dei. 20. Adorámus Agnum Dei.

SECTION IX.

Second Declension: Plural.

Nominative case	**óculi**	eyes (subject)
Vocative case	**óculi**	O eyes
Accusative case	**óculos**	eyes (*object*)
Genitive case	**oculórum**	of eyes
Dative case	**óculis**	to *or* for eyes
Ablative case	**óculis**	by, with, *or* from eyes

EXERCISE XV.

VOCABULARY.

pópulus,* people, nation.
amícus, a friend.
Paulus, Paul.
Apóstolus, an Apostle.
Sanctus, a saint.
Petrus, Peter.

1. Petrus et Paulus sunt Sancti. 2. Pópulus Deum adórat. 3. Ángeli Deum possunt vidére. 4. Servus regínae est amícus Petri. 5. Paulus Christum adórat. 6. Petrus est Apóstolus Dómini. 7. Deus líberat pópulum. 8. Servus habet rosas et corónas. 9. Ancíllae fílias regínae rosis ornant. 10. Amámus Sanctos Dei. 11. Ángeli adórant Agnum Dei. 12. Fílium regínae vidére póssumus. 13. Ángelus Dei núntiat Petro. 14. Quis est amícus servi? 15. Cur non audes fábulam narráre fílio regínae? 16. Fílias parvas regínae magnae saepe vidére póssumus. 17. Deum semper amáre debémus. 18. Deus jubet pópulum oráre. 19. Ancíllae regínam vidére non possunt. 20. Terra laudat et adórat Deum.

SECTION X.

Gender of Nouns.

Most nouns of the 1st Declension are **Feminine** in gender, whereas those of the 2nd Declension (ending in **-us**) are **Masculine.** An Adjective qualifying a masculine noun is therefore declined like **óculus**: *e.g.*, **magnus óculus,** *a great eye;* **magni óculi,** *great eyes.*

* **populus** is always followed by a singular verb: *e.g.*, ***the people are glad,* populus est laetus.**

EXERCISE XVI.

VOCABULARY.

sanctus, holy.
meus, my.
tuus, thy, your.
quem ? whom ?
illumináre, to enlighten.
multus, much (*plural*, many).
cantáre, to sing.
latus, broad, wide.

1. Deus illúminat óculos meos. 2. Cur fílias tuas culpas, O fémina ? 3. Non possum vidére terram óculis meis. 4. Fília nea est ancílla Maríae. 5. Fílius meus est servus regínae. 6. Ángeli Dei sunt sancti. 7. Sancti Dei sunt laeti. 8. Ancíllae Maríae sunt laetae. 9. Ancíllas parvas óculis tuis terrére potes. 10. Quem vidétis ? Vidémus fílium regínae. 11. Deus líberat mundum et pópulum. 12. Aqua est lata et terra est magna. 13. Cur das rosas ancíllis tuis ? 14. Christus est Fílius Dei. 15. Regínam non amámus quia non est bona. 16. Fémina epístolam meam non laudat. 17. Habémus multos servos et multas ancíllas. 18. Puéllae dant multas rosas regínae magnae. 19. Saepe vidémus fílium parvum regínae magnae. 20. Vidémus aquas latas et stellas multas. 21. Quis potest cantáre ? Puella potest cantáre. 22. Servus tenet multas epístolas. 23. Quis timet aquam ? 24. Puélla parva timet aquam latam. 25. Ancíllae cantant et orant.

EXERCISE XVII.

VOCABULARY.

albus, white.
lúcidus, bright, clear.
quot ? how many ?
fámulus, a servant.
serváre, to keep, save, preserve, guard.
pulsáre, to knock, knock at.
atque, and, moreover.
diléctus, beloved.
porta, gate, door.

1. Deus servat pópulum. 2. Aqua est lúcida. 3. Rosa est alba. 4. Via est lata et longa. 5. Agnus est albus. 6. Fámulus est diléctus. 7. Stellae sunt lúcidae. 8. Quis est fámulus regínae ? 9. Quot rosas habes ? 10. Quis pulsat portam meam ? 11. Fámulus regínae pulsat portam tuam. 12. Quot fámulos habes ? 13. Habeo multos fámulos. 14. Fília mea habet agnum album. 15. Deus servat atque illúminat mundum. 16. Regína habet corónam rosárum albárum. 17. María habet corónam stellárum lucidárum. 18. Quot stellas vidére potéstis ? 19. Non possúmus vidére multas stellas. 20. Cur regínam times ? 21. Timeo regínam quia saepe culpat ancíllas. 22. Petrus est amícus diléctus pópuli. 23. Quot rosas in viis vidére potes ? 24. Non debémus pulsáre portam regínae. 25. Fámulus regínae cantáre potest. 26. Cur pulsas portam meam ? 27. Fámulus

meus servat agnos meos. 28. Aquam lúcidam vidére póssumus. 29. Non debes terrére agnos parvos. 30. Fámuli atque ancíllae portam pulsant.

SECTION XI.

Second Declension (*Continued*).

N.B.—A few nouns of the 2nd Declension end in **-er** instead of in **-us**. Most of them drop the "**e**" after the Vocative singular, and from the Accusative case onwards are declined like **óculus**. They are all Masculine in gender.

AGER, a field.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nominative	**ager**	**agri**
Vocative	**ager**	**agri**
Accusative	**agrum**	**agros**
Genitive	**agri**	**agrórum**
Dative	**agro**	**agris**
Ablative	**agro**	**agris**

N.B.—**Puer**, *a boy*, keeps the "**e**" throughout the declension—*e.g.* Genitive, **pueri**, Dative, **puero**, etc.

EXERCISE XVIII.

VOCABULARY.

magíster, a master.	**minister**, a servant.
liber, a book.	**vir**, a man (*Genitive*, **viri**).
puer, a boy.	**aráre**, to plough.

1. Magístri púeros docent. 2. Minístri libros regínae dant. 3. Púeri agros arant. 4. Magístrum semper laudámus. 5. Púeros et puéllas saepe culpámus. 6. Minístri regínae agros latos arant. 7. Magíster librum púero dat. 8. Quis laudat librum magístri? 9. Vir fábulam longam púeris parvis saepe narrat. 10. Púeri cantant Dómino. 11. Regína habet agros latos. 12. Magíster malus púeros parvos terret. 13. Púeri tenent libros et epístolas. 14. Ángeli sunt minístri Dei. 15. Viri et féminae Dóminum laudant. 16. Minístri stellas pueris parvis monstrant. 17. Magístri vocant púeros malos. 18. Debémus aráre agros regínae. 19. Púeri mali non audent culpáre magístrum. 20. Deus illúminat óculos ministrórum.

EXERCISE XIX.

(Adjectives in -er.)

VOCABULARY.

noster, our. **pulcher**, beautiful, fair.
vester, your. **miser**, unhappy (*feminine*, **misera**).

1. Regína est pulchra. 2. Viri sunt míseri. 3. Minístri nostri sunt laeti. 4. Púeri vestri sunt mali. 5. Pátria nostra est pulchra. 6. Amícus noster est fílius magístri. 7. Agri nostri sunt lati et pulchri. 8. Servi vestri non possunt cantáre. 9. Óculi puéllae sunt magni et pulchri. 10. Cur miser es? 11. Miser sum quia magíster non laudat epístolam meam. 12. María est pulchra. 13. Non debémus culpáre minístros regínae. 14. Pátriam nostram semper amámus. 15. Fílius regínae non potest monére servum tuum. 16. Púeros parvos saepe terres. 17. Quis terram potest vidére? 18. Vidémus stellas et aquas latas. 19. Servi vestri sunt míseri, sed ancíllae nostrae sunt laetae. 20. Regína pulchra terret servos míseros. 21. Cur fémina vocat puéllas? 22. Fémina vocat puéllas quia malae sunt. 23. Regína vult adjuváre púeros et puéllas. 24. Magíster noster docet fílios regínae. 25. Servi debent aráre agros. 26. Non possum cantáre. 27. Quis dat pecúniam parvis púeris? 28. Ángeli Dei sunt boni et pulchri. 29. Servi nostri sunt amíci ancíllae. 30. Minístri adórant Agnum Dei.

SECTION XII.

Neuter Nouns of the 2nd Declension.

Neuter nouns of the 2nd Declension have the first three cases of the singular ending in **-um**, and the first three cases of the plural in **-a**, otherwise they are declined like **óculus**.

REGNUM, a kingdom.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nominative	**regnum**	**regna**
Vocative	**regnum**	**regna**
Accusative	**regnum**	**regna**
Genitive	**regni**	**regnórum**
Dative	**regno**	**regnis**
Ablative	**regno**	**regnis**

EXERCISE XX.

VOCABULARY.

auxílium, help.	**Christiánus**, a Christian.
peccátum, sin.	**bellum**, war.
saéculum, age.	**verbum**, a word.
óstium, gate.	**coelum**, heaven (*plur.* coeli, coelos, etc.).

1. Saécula saeculórum. 2. Verbum Dei. 3. Regnum coeli. 4. Auxílium Christianórum. 5. Ostium coeli. 6. Bellum timémus. 7. Quis laudat verba regínae? 8. Peccátum non debémus amáre. 9. Féminae bellum semper timent. 10. Amícus magístri non laudat verba puerórum. 11. Ancílla vult vidére óstium coeli. 12. Coelum est regnum Dei. 13. Adorámus Verbum Dei. 14. Púeros parvos verbis tuis saepe terres. 15. Quis epístolam tuam audet culpáre? 16. Minístri verba regínae magístro núntiant. 17. Bella magna terrent viros et féminas. 18. María est auxílium Christianórum. 19. María Christiános semper ádjuvat. 20. Óstium coeli non póssumus vidére. 21. Fámuli óstium pulsant. 22. Stellas lúcidas possúmus vidére. 23. Christiáni sunt fámuli Dei. 24. Bellum terret féminas. 25. Verba tua non laudámus.

EXERCISE XXI.

VOCABULARY.

judicáre, to judge.	**periculum**, danger.
me, me.	**nos**, we *or* us.
te, thee.	**vos**, you (*subject or object*).

N.B.—The Neuter form of the Adjective ends in **-um**, and declines like **regnum**.

1. Adorámus te, Dómine. 2. Liberámus vos, O servi. 3. Perículum est magnum. 4. María est Regína Coeli. 5. Verba magístri sunt bona. 6. María est auxílium nostrum. 7. Deus júdicat peccáta nostra. 8. Deus nos semper amat. 9. Laudámus vos, quia boni estis. 10. Puéllae parvae perículum timent. 11. Perícula magna terrent púeros et viros. 12. Pópulum judicáre non debémus. 13. Servi núntiant verba regínae magístro. 14. Habémus multos servos et minístros. 15. Sanctus es, Deus. 16. Óstium coeli est pulchrum. 17. Peccáta sunt mala. 18. Servi sunt míseri quia perículum timent. 19. Quem times, O serve? 20. Petrum et Paulum, Sanctos Dei, semper laudámus.

SECTION XIII.

Prepositions.

Prepositions govern either the **Accusative** or **Ablative** case, or occasionally both these cases, in Latin.

EXERCISE XXII.

VOCABULARY.

ante, before (Acc.).	**pro**, for, on behalf of (Abl.).
post, after (Acc.).	**cum**, with (Abl.).
stare, to stand.	**pugnáre**, to fight.

1. María orat pro mundo. 2. Ángeli stant ante óstium coeli. 3. Pugnámus pro pátriâ. 4. Cur orátis pro fílio regínae? 5. Orámus pro fílio regínae quia est miser. 6. Stamus cum amícis nostris. 7. Post multas horas perículi puéllae sunt laetae. 8. Dóminus líberat nos. 9. Sancti orant pro mundo. 10. Cur non audes pugnáre pro pátriâ tuâ? 11. Pugnámus pro amícis nostris. 12. Regína vocat minístros et servos. 13. Ancíllae orant pro regínâ magnâ. 14. Quis non potest pugnáre pro pátriâ? 15. Servi stant ante óstia. 16. Post multa perícula pátriam nostram vidére póssumus. 17. Quis pugnat cum servis? 18. Debémus oráre pro ancíllis regínae, quia míserae sunt. 19. Regína jubet servos pugnáre pro pátriâ. 20. Puélla vult stare cum féminâ.

EXERCISE XXIII.

VOCABULARY.

ad, to, at, towards (Acc.).	**in**, in, on (Abl.); into (Acc.).
trans, across (Acc.).	**a** (**ab** *before a vowel*), by, from (Abl.).
jánua, gate, door.	**ambuláre**, to walk.

1. Deus est in coelo. 2. Orámus ad Deum. 3. Servi sunt in agris. 4. Vídeo viros trans aquam. 5. In Deo debémus speráre. 6. María orat ad Deum pro mundo. 7. Ambulámus cum amícis nostris. 8. Stamus ante jánuam. 9. Sancti ámbulant in viâ Dómini. 10. Deus líberat nos a perículo. 11. María est Jánua Coeli.* 12. Quem vides trans aquam? 13. Cujus libros laudas? 14. Servi míseri stant in viis. 15. Minístri regínae agros latos arant. 16. Puéllae ámbulant in viis cum féminâ. 17. Quem vidétis in agris? 18. Vidémus fílios regínae in agris. 19. Ambulámus ad agros. 20. Ambulámus ad jánuam cum amícis nostris.

* See page 129.

21. Stellas lúcidas in coelis vidémus. 22. Quis jánuam pulsat? 23. Fámuli servant óstium. 24. Quot agnos habétis in agris? 25. Fámuli regínae agros arant.

EXERCISE XXIV.

N.B.—Adjectives may be used without a noun in Latin: *e.g.*, **boni**, *the good*, or *good people*, **mali**, *the wicked*, etc. So **malum** (neuter singular) means *evil* (literally, *a bad thing*).

VOCABULARY.

inimícus, an enemy.	**beátus**, blessed.
justus, just.	**ánima**, soul, life.
ira, anger, wrath.	**clamáre**, to cry.
de, from, concerning (Abl.).	**profúndum**, a depth.

1. De profúndis clamámus ad te, Dómine. 2. Deus júdicat peccáta malórum. 3. Deus líberat nos a malo. 4. Vitae Sanctórum sunt beátae. 5. Ánimae justórum sunt in coelo. 6. Timémus iram Dei. 7. Inimíci nostri non laudant nos. 8. Ángeli Dei sunt beáti. 9. Justi ámbulant in viâ Dómini. 10. Deus illúminat óculos justórum. 11. Cur stas in viâ et oras? 12. Stellae sunt óculi coeli. 13. Deus est in coelis. 14. Béati vident óstia coelórum. 15. Deus est justus, et líberat nos a malo. 16. Ad te, Sancta María, clamámus. 17. Christiáni ámbulant in viis Dómini. 18. Stamus ante jánuam coeli et clamámus ad Dóminum. 19. Iram Dei semper timére debémus. 20. Deus regnat in coelis.

EXERCISE XXV.

VOCABULARY.

sedére, to sit.	**exaltáre**, to exalt.
quid? what?	**déxtera**, right hand.*
vivus, living.	**misericórdia**, mercy.
mórtuus, dead.	**leváre**, to lift up.

1. Deus júdicat vivos et mórtuos. 2. Christus sedet ad déxteram Dei. 3. Ad te, Dómine, óculos meos levo. 4. De profúndis óculos nostros ad Deum levámus. 5. Justi sperant in misericórdiâ tuâ, Dómine. 6. Fílii regínae ámbulant in viâ justórum. 7. Deus líberat nos ab inimícis nostris. 8. Sperámus in misericórdiâ Dei. 9. Quid times, O serve? Tímeo iram magístri. 10. Déxtera Dei me exaltáre potest. 11. Ad te, Dómine, levo ánimam meam. 12. Sancti sedent in coelo, et orant pro mundo. 13. Servus meus est mórtuus. 14. Deus júdicat vitas mortuórum. 15. Debémus amáre inimícos nostros.

* **déxtera** is sometimes written **dextra**.

16. Vivi sperant in misericórdiâ Dómini. 17. Regína est mísera quia ancílla est mórtua. 18. Déxtera Dei exáltat justos. 19. Ira Dómini nos terret. 20. Cur non times verba Dómini ?

SECTION XIV.

Third Conjugation : RÉGERE, to rule.

Present Tense.

rego	I rule (*or* am ruling)
regis	thou rulest
regit	he rules
régimus	we rule
régitis	you rule
regunt	they rule

EXERCISE XXVI.

VOCABULARY.

dúcere, to lead.
dícere, to say, tell, speak.
lúdere, to play.
quo ? whither ? where ?
benedícere, to bless.
míttere, to send.
scríbere, to write.
vádere, to go, walk.

1. Quo vadis ? 2. Quem mittis ? 3. Quid dicis ? 4. Deus nos benedícit. 5. Quid scríbitis ? 6. Quis epístolam mittit ? 7. Deus regit mundum. 8. Quid dícitis ? 9. Quem servus ducit ? 10. Púeri ludunt in agris. 11. Quo vadit servus ? 12. Servus vadit ad agros. 13. Quis potest scríbere epístolam ? 14. Servus ducit puéllas et púeros. 15. Mitto servum meum ad regínam. 16. Quid scribis in epistolâ ? 17. Ancílla ducit parvam puéllam. 18. Deus justos benedícit. 19. Quem mittis ad regínam ? 20. Quo vadunt púeri ?

EXERCISE XXVII.

VOCABULARY.

relínquere, to leave.
dilígere, to love.
umbra, a shadow.
ala, a wing.
protégere, to protect.
cognóscere, to know.
deféndere, to defend.
sub, under (Abl.).

1. Deus prótegit me sub umbrâ alárum. 2. Deus nos díligit et nos Deum dilígimus. 3. Nos cognóscimus Christum, et Christus cognóscit nos. 4. Quo vadit ancílla ? Ancílla vadit

ad regínam. 5. Púeri stant in agris et sub umbrâ. 6. Alae angelórum sunt pulchrae. 7. Fílius regínae librum magnum scribit. 8. Dóminus nos deféndit ab inimícis nostris. 9. Deus mittit ángelos ad terram. 10. Christus relínquit terram et vadit ad coelos. 11. Ángelos Dei dilígimus. 12. Cur relínquis púeros in agris? 13. Ángeli nos protégere possunt sub umbrâ alárum. 14. Deus nos deféndit a perículo. 15. Debémus dilígere inimícos nostros. 16. Quid dicis, O magíster? verba tua non laudo. 17. Puéllae parvae ludunt in agris sub umbrâ. 18. Regnum Dei est in coelo. 19. Quis servum ad regínam míttere potest? 20. Púeri non audent lúdere in viis, quia timent fílios magístri.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

VOCABULARY.

princípium, a beginning. **tóllere**, to take away.
dimíttere, to dismiss *or* forgive. **suus**, his (*or* her, *or* their) own.
nunc (*adverb*), now.

1. In princípio, et nunc, et semper, et in saécula saeculórum. 2. Agnus Dei tollit peccáta mundi. 3. Deus dimíttit peccáta pópuli. 4. Quis audet nos culpáre? 5. Cur laudas púeros malos? 6. Ángeli Dei prótegunt nos a periculis. 7. Sancti Dei sunt in coelis. 8. Deus benedícit justos et bonos. 9. Christus nunc relínquit mundum. 10. Deus amat pópulum suum. 11. Quis audet míttere servum ad regínam magnam? 12. Regína laudat fílios suos, sed culpat fílias féminae. 13. Alas angelórum non vidére póssumus. 14. Minístri regínae arant agros, sed púeri ludunt in umbrâ. 15. Deus illúminat óculos pópuli. 16. Déxtera Dei exáltat Sanctos suos. 17. Féminae sedent in agris. 18. Regína dimíttit peccáta ancillárum. 19. Fílius magístri docet púeros parvos. 20. Púeri et puéllae vadunt in agros.

SECTION XV.

Fourth Conjugation: AUDÍRE, to hear.

Present Tense.

audio	I hear (*or* am hearing)
audis	thou hearest
audit	he hears
audímus	we hear
audítis	you hear
aúdiunt	they hear

EXERCISE XXIX.

VOCABULARY.

impedíre, to hinder.
sepelíre, to bury.
punire, to punish.
exaudíre, to hear graciously.
venire, to come.
advenire, to come to, arrive at.

1. Féminae púerum sepéliunt. 2. Puélla venit ad me. 3. Quis punit ancíllam? 4. Púeri impédiunt magístrum. 5. Christus audit nos, Christus exaúdit nos. 6. Audímus alas angelórum. 7. Advénimus ad jánuam. 8. Quid te ímpedit? 9. Cur punis púeros parvos? 10. Cujus fílium sepelítis? 11. Magíster punit púeros malos, sed laudat puéllas bonas. 12. Quis audet nos punire? 13. Non debes impedíre servos regínae. 14. Sanctus Petrus stat ad óstium coeli. 15. Quis potest audíre alas angelórum? 16. Púeri et puéllae véniunt in agros. 17. Cur punis servum bonum? 18. Regína magna jubet servos suos punire ancíllam míseram. 19. Puélla parva vult lúdere in agris. 20. Debémus audíre verba magistrórum nostrórum.

EXERCISE XXX.

VOCABULARY.

plenus (*followed by Abl.*), full.
propter (Acc.), on account of, for.
nobis, *Dat. and Abl. of* **nos.**
vobis, *Dat. and Abl. of* **vos.**
custodíre, to guard.
grátia, grace.
ágere, to do, act, drive.
grátias ágere, to thank, give thanks (*Dative of person*).
aperíre, to open.

1. María est plena grátiâ. 2. Deo grátias ágimus. 3. Servus áperit jánuas. 4. Ángeli Deo grátias agunt. 5. Servi et minístri custódiunt regínam. 6. Sancti et Apóstoli sunt pleni grátiâ. 7. Grátias ágimus Deo propter magnam glóriam. 8. Nunc dimíttis servum tuum, Dómine. 9. Plena est terra glóriâ tuâ, Dómine. 10. Deo grátias ágere semper debémus. 11. Minístri regínae orant pro nobis. 12. Pleni sunt coeli et terra glóriâ Dei. 13. Áncilla Dómino grátias agit. 14. Ángeli Dei nos custódiunt sub umbrâ alárum suárum. 15. Servi sunt míseri propter peccáta sua. 16. Regína jubet servos custodíre jánuas. 17. Fémina sépelit fílium mórtuum. 18. Timémus regínam propter iram. 19. Te adorámus et benedícimus, Deus. 20. Coelum est plenum glóriâ Dei.

SECTION XVI.

The Imperative Mood.

The 2nd person singular of the Imperative Active of any verb is formed by removing the **-re** of the Infinitive: *e.g.*, **amáre,** *to love,* **ama,** *love thou;* **audíre,** *to hear,* **audi,** *hear thou.*

The 2nd person plural of the Imperative Active is formed by adding **-te** to the 2nd person singular, except with 3rd Conjugation verbs, when the **-e** of the singular must first be changed to **i**: *e.g.*, **ama, amáte ; mone, monéte ; audi, audíte ;** *but* **rege, régite.**

EXERCISE XXXI.

VOCABULARY.

convértere, to turn. **ave** (*Imperative*), hail!
thronus, a throne. **intercédere,** to intercede.

1. Ángeli stant ante thronum Dei. 2. Ora pro nobis, Sancta María. 3. Intercédite pro nobis, Sancti Petre et Paule. 4. Ángeli Dei, custodíte nos. 5. Jube me veníre ad te, Dómine. 6. Veníte ad me. 7. Defénde nos, Dómine. 8. Exaúdi nos, Christe. 9. Leva óculos tuos et vide ángelos. 10. Prótege nos, Deus, sub umbrâ alárum tuárum. 11. Líbera nos, Dómine, a perículo et malo. 12. Ave María, grátiâ plena. 13. Protégite nos, Sancti Apóstoli. 14. Ádjuva nos, Sancta María. 15. Illúmina óculos meos, Dómine. 16. Custodíte óstia, servi. 17. Veníte in agros et lúdite, púeri. 18. Monéte púeros, magístri. 19. Convérte óculos tuos ad Dóminum. 20. Ángeli vident thronum Dei.

SECTION XVII.

Future of 1st and 2nd Conjugations.

amábo	I shall love	**monébo**	I shall advise
amábis	thou wilt love	**monébis**	thou wilt advise
amábit	he will love	**monébit**	he will advise
amábimus	we shall love	**monébimus**	we shall advise
amábitis	you will love	**monébitis**	you will advise
amábunt	they will love	**monébunt**	they will advise

EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Levábo óculos ad Dóminum. 2. Deus adjuvábit et liberábit nos. 3. Orábimus ad Dóminum Deum nostrum. 4. Laudábitis verba Dómini. 5. Vidébis ángelos Dei. 6. Timébimus te, Dómine. 7. Verba tua terrébunt púeros parvos. 8. Stábimus ante jánuas coeli. 9. Ángeli vidébunt glóriam Dei. 10. Déxtera Dei exaltábit justos. 11. Dóminus illuminábit óculos meos. 12. Deus liberábit pópulum suum. 13. Stábimus ante thronum Dei. 14. Clamábimus ad Dóminum. 15. Dóminus judicábit nos. 16. Sancti habébunt glóriam in coelis. 17. Ambulábimus in viis Dómini. 18. Quis audébit míttere servum ad regínam? 19. Regína jubébit te scríbere multas epístolas. 20. Fémina narrábit fábulas longas.

Future of ESSE.

ero	I shall be	**érimus**	we shall be
eris	thou wilt be	**éritis**	you will be
erit	he will be	**erunt**	they will be

EXERCISE XXXIII.

VOCABULARY.

íterum, again.
sicut, as.
ut, as, when.
pupílla, pupil (*of eye*), apple of eye.
pius, pious, gentle, loving.
solus, alone.

1. Érimus boni. 2. Púeri erunt mali. 3. Puélla erit pulchra. 4. Quis erit magíster? 5. Laetus ero. 6. Pius eris. 7. Dóminus adjuvábit servos suos. 8. Deus solus est bonus. 9. Custódi me, Dómine, ut pupíllam óculi: sub umbrâ alárum tuárum prótege me. 10. Iterum clamábo ad te, Dómine. 11. Sancti erunt in coelo. 12. Laudáte Deum, Apóstoli et Sancti. 13. De profúndis clamábo ad te, Dómine. 14. Veníte, fílii, et audíte me. 15. Déxtera Dei exaltábit me. 16. Lauda, ánima mea, Dóminum. 17. Amíci nostri sperant in Deo. 18. Ángeli stant ante thronum Dei. 19. Justi erunt beáti. 20. Íterum venímus ad te, Dómine.

SECTION XVII (*Continued*).

Future of 3rd and 4th Conjugations.

N.B.—The Future of the 3rd and 4th Conjugations differs considerably from that of the 1st and 2nd, and care must be taken not to confuse the Future of the 3rd Conjugation with the Present of the 2nd.

regam	I shall rule	**aúdiam**	I shall hear
reges	thou wilt rule	**aúdies**	thou wilt hear
reget	he will rule	**aúdiet**	he will hear
regémus	we shall rule	**audiémus**	we shall hear
regétis	you will rule	**audiétis**	you will hear
regent	they will rule	**aúdient**	they will hear

EXERCISE XXXIV.

VOCABULARY.

divínus, divine. **osténdere**, to show.
súrgere, to rise. **resúrgere**, to rise again.
légere, to read. **nunquam**, never.

1. Deus osténdet nobis misericórdiam suam. 2. Legémus multos libros. 3. Quis póterit scríbere epístolam? 4. Audiémus verba magístri. 5. Púeri ludent in agris. 6. Deus nos próteget sub umbrâ alárum. 7. Ángeli nos custódient. 8. Deus nos deféndet. 9. Sanctus Petrus apériet óstium coeli. 10. Christus tollet peccáta mundi. 11. Véniam ad te, Dómine. 12. Adveniémus ad jánuam coeli. 13. Deus solus est divínus. 14. Déxtera Dei nos deféndet. 15. Quis póterit aperíre óstium coeli? 16. Quo convértam óculos meos? 17. Deus me custódiet ut pupíllam óculi sui. 18. Sanctus Paulus intercédet pro nobis. 19. Deus dimíttet peccáta nostra. 20. Deus solus est sanctus et pius et divínus.

SECTION XVIII.

Imperfect of all Conjugations.

amábam	**monébam**	**regébam**	**audiébam**	**eram**
amábas	**monébas**	**regébas**	**audiébas**	**eras**
amábat	**monébat**	**regébat**	**audiébat**	**erat**
amabámus	**monebámus**	**regebámus**	**audiebámus**	**erámus**
amabátis	**monebátis**	**regebátis**	**audiebátis**	**erátis**
amábant	**monébant**	**regébant**	**audiébant**	**erant**

N.B.—The Imperfect Tense is used to express continuous or habitual action in past time, and may be translated *I was loving*, or *I used to love*. **Eram** means *I was*, or *I used to be*.

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Ancíllae clamábant ad Deum. 2. Regína laudábat puéllas. 3. Fémina narrábat fábulam longam. 4. Audiebámus verba magístri. 5. Puélla timébat regínam. 6. Regína erat bona et pulchra. 7. Púeri aperiébant jánuas. 8. Minístri docébant fílios féminae. 9. Servus ducébat puéllas parvas. 10. Fémina monstrábat stellas fílio regínae. 11. Magíster púeros malos puniébat. 12. Sicut erat in princípio, et nunc, et semper, et in saécula saeculórum. 13. Magíster bonus monébat púeros parvos. 14. Regína laudábat epístolas tuas. 15. María erat ancílla Dómini. 16. Puélla librum longum legébat. 17. Non poterámus veníre ad jánuam. 18. Puer parvus scribébat epístolam longam. 19. Glória sanctórum erat magna. 20. Timebámus verba féminae. 21. Puélla fábulam longam nobis narrábat. 22. Ángelus veniébat ad Maríam. 23. Quis póterat légere librum? 24. Cur ludébas in agris? 25. Magíster nos semper terrébat. 26. Servi regínae jánuam custodiébant. 27. Ambulabámus in viis. 28. Magíster erat pius. 29. Cur veniébas ad me? 30. Verba regínae terrébant puéllam parvam.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

VOCABULARY.

totus, whole, all.	**aetérnus**, eternal.
benedíctus, blessed.	**in aetérnum**, to eternity.
ascéndere, to ascend.	**descéndere**, to descend.
fíere, to weep.	**ecce**, behold.

N.B.—The preposition **cum**, *with*, is suffixed to the ablative case of the personal pronouns: *e.g.*, **mecum**, *with me*; **nobíscum**, *with us*; **vobíscum**, *with you*, etc.

The verb *to be* is often omitted in Latin, and must be supplied in the English: *e.g.*, **Dóminus vobíscum**, *the Lord be with you.*

1. Tota pulchra es, María. 2. Ecce ancílla Dómini. 3. Adorámus te in aetérnum, Dómine. 4. Féminae sedébant et flebant. 5. Nunquam vidébo regínam. 6. Christus ascéndit in coelum. 7. Christus descéndit ad terram. 8. Ecce Agnus Dei. 9. Ave María, grátiâ plena, Dóminus tecum. 10. Benedícta es, María. 11. Deus est aetérnus. 12. Ángeli descéndent de coelo. 13. Quis vidébit glóriam Dei? 14. Nunquam íterum te vidébo. 15. Quid dicis, O magíster? 16. Cur laudábas púeros et culpábas puéllas? 17. Púeri et puéllae ludébant in agris cum ancíllâ regínae. 18. Véniam tecum ad regínam. 19. Ángeli Dei custódient nos. 20. Quid times? Deus semper prótegit pópulum suum. 21. Te laudábimus in aetérnum, O Deus.

22. Grátias agémus Dómino. 23. Regína mittet multos servos ad féminam. 24. Sancti ascéndent ad coelos. 25. Ángelus Dei nuntiábat Maríae. 26. Vitam nostram Dómino damus. 27. Deus próteget et custódiet nos in perículo. 28. Rosas multas regínae magnae dábimus. 29. Deus nos jubébit veníre ad óstium coeli. 30. Christe, audi nos; Christe, exaúdi nos.

SECTION XIX.

Third Declension.

N.B.—The 3rd Declension is difficult because the Nominative Singular may terminate with almost any letter of the alphabet, and the stem of the noun may differ from the Nominative. It is therefore necessary to know the stem of a noun before it can be declined, and as the stem is found by removing the case-ending of the Genitive Singular, in the subsequent vocabularies the Genitive case is given after all nouns. As the Gender of the 3rd Declension varies, the gender of these nouns will be given.

CLAMOR, a cry (*m.*).

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nominative	**clamor**	**clamóres**
Vocative	**clamor**	**clamóres**
Accusative	**clamórem**	**clamóres**
Genitive	**clamóris**	**clamórum**
Dative	**clamóri**	**clamóribus**
Ablative	**clamóre**	**clamóribus**

EXERCISE XXXVII.

VOCABULARY.

múlier, mulíeris (*f.*), a woman.
labor, labóris (*m.*), work.
amor, amóris (*m.*), love.
pastor, pastóris (*m.*), a shepherd.
martyr, mártyris (*m.* or *f.*), a martyr.
redémptor, redemptóris (*m.*), a redeemer.

1. Clamóres nostri véniunt ad te, Dómine. 2. Mártyres vitam suam Dómino dant. 3. María est Regína Mártyrum. 4. Mulíeres véniunt ad Christum. 5. Amor Dei est magnus. 6. Deus benedícet labórem nostrum. 7. Audímus clamóres puerórum. 8. Vidémus pastórem in agris. 9. Christus est Redémptor mundi. 10. Ora pro nobis, Regína Mártyrum. 11. Regína laudat labórem ministrórum. 12. Mulíeres non saepe audent pugnáre in bello. 13. María est auxílium nostrum in labóre. 14. Mulíeres

flebant ante thronum regínae. 15. Videbámus multos pastóres in agris. 16. Amor regínae est magnus. 17. Damus multas rosas muliéribus. 18. Audiebámus clamóres mulíerum. 19. Jesus est pastor bonus. 20. Labor pastórum est magnus.

Third Declension (*Continued*).

N.B.—The following declensions show some common types of 3rd Declension nouns. The singular only is given, as the plural in each case is quite regular.*

	PAX (*f.*), peace.	VIRGO (*f.*), Virgin.	MILES (*m.*), soldier.
Nominative ..	pax	Virgo	miles
Vocative ..	pax	Virgo	miles
Accusative ..	pacem	Vírginem	mílitem
Genitive ..	pacis	Vírginis	mílitis
Dative ..	paci	Vírgini	míliti
Ablative ..	pace	Vírgine	mílite

	VIRTUS (*f.*), virtue.	LAUS (*f.*), praise.	ORATIO (*f.*), prayer.
Nominative	virtus	laus	orátio
Vocative ..	virtus	laus	orátio
Accusative ..	virtútem	laudem	oratiónem
Genitive ..	virtútis	laudis	oratiónis
Dative	virtúti	laudi	oratióni
Ablative ..	virtúte	laude	oratióne

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Christiáni sunt mílites Christi. 2. Laudem et amórem Deo damus. 3. María est Virgo Vírginum. 4. Pax vobíscum. 5. Exaúdi, Dómine, oratiónem meam. 6. Mílites bellum saepe amant. 7. Deus pacem suam nobis dat, et ducet nos in viam sanctam. 8. Virtútem Sanctórum laudámus. 9. Mílites pugnant pro pátriâ. 10. Laus Deo semper. 11. Vidébimus mílites in viis et agris. 12. Púeri amant mílites. 13. Da nobis pacem tuam, Dómine. 14. Mulíeres laudant mílites. 15. Orámus pro muliéribus quia míserae sunt. 16. Ad te venímus, María, Virgo Vírginum. 17. Amámus te, O puer, quia bonus es.

* For those nouns which form their Genitive Plural in **-ium** see note on page 88.

18. Deus aúdiet oratiónes nostras. 19. Amámus beátam Maríam semper Vírginem. 20. Laudo virtútem mílitum Christianórum.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

VOCABULARY.

pater, patris (*m.*), father.
mater, matris (*f.*), mother.
panis, panis (*m.*), bread, loaf.
mors, mortis (*f.*), death.
hódiē, to-day.
illuminátio, illuminatiónis (*f.*), light.
quotidiánus, daily.
donáre, to grant, give.
et, also, too, so.
cras, to-morrow.

1. Díligam te, Dómine, virtus mea. 2. Dóminus illuminátio mea. 3. Panem de coelo das nobis, Dómine. 4. Dona nobis pacem. 5. María est Mater Dei. 6. Mílites Christiáni pugnant pro Christo. 7. Deus est Pater noster. 8. Ecce panis Angelórum. 9. Panem nostrum quotidiánum da nobis hódiē. 10. Cras vidébimus mulíeres et puéllas. 11. Post mortem est vita aetérna. 12. Dilígimus Matrem Christi. 13. Dóminus vitam in pátriâ nobis donat. 14. Sicut in coelo et in terrâ. 15. Sancta María, ora pro nobis, nunc et in horâ mortis nostrae. 16. Nunc Christus nos relínquit et vadit ad patrem. 17. Hódiē lúdimus in agris, sed cras vadémus ad bellum. 18. Regína dat panem puéllis et púeris. 19. Deus panem quotidiánum nobis dat. 20. Dóminus illuminátio mea est, quem timébo? 21. Deus vitam aetérnam post mortem nobis dat. 22. Cur mortem timémus? 23. Mílites pugnant pro regínâ et pátriâ. 24. Debémus adjuváre mílites pecúniâ et pane. 25. Cras vidébimus regínam.

EXERCISE XL.

VOCABULARY.

véritas, veritátis (*f.*), truth.
lux, lucis (*f.*), light.
vox, vocis (*f.*), voice.
salve, hail!
auctor, auctóris (*m.*), author.
soror, soróris (*f.*), sister.
qui (*relative pronoun*), who.
manére, to remain, abide, endure.
incénsum, incénsi (*n.*), incense.
peccátor, peccatóris (*m.* or *f.*), a sinner.
conféssor, confessóris (*m.*), a confessor.
honor, honóris (*m.*), honour.

1. Véritas Dómini manébit in aetérnum. 2. Incénsum ascéndit ad Dóminum. 3. Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, dona nobis pacem. 4. Pater noster, qui es in coelis. 5. Christus est lux mundi. 6. Ángeli vocem Dómini audíre possunt. 7. Grátias agam Dómino qui líberat me a malo. 8. Beátus est vir qui sperat in Dómino. 9. Sancta María, Mater Dei, ora pro nobis peccatóribus, nunc et in horâ mortis nostrae. 10. Dómine, Deus virtútum, exaúdi oratiónem meam. 11. Mártyres et Con-

fessóres, oráte pro nobis. 12. Honórem et amórem Deo dábimus. 13. Jesus est Auctor vitae nostrae. 14. Salve Regína, Mater misericórdiae. 15. Ancílla regínae est soror magístri. 16. Nos peccatóres clamámus ad te, Dómine. 17. Lucem stellárum vidére póssumus. 18. Deus veritátem et virtútem amat. 19. Manébo cum soróribus meis in agris. 20. Mílites, qui pugnant in viis, sunt boni.

EXERCISE XLI.

Vocabulary.

ovis,* ovis (*f.*), sheep.	**mons,* montis** (*m.*), mountain, hill.
ego, I.	**tibi** (*Dative of* **tu**), to thee, to you.
tu, thou, you.	**mihi** (*Dative of* **ego**), to me.

1. Grátias ágimus tibi, propter magnam glóriam tuam. 2. Dona mihi pacem tuam. 3. De profúndis clamábo ad te, Dómine; Dómine, exaúdi vocem meam. 4. In horâ mortis meae voca me, et jube me veníre ad te, Dómine. 5. Ad montes levábo óculos meos. 6. Fémina longam fábulam mihi narrábat. 7. Laudáte, púeri, Dóminum; et grátias Deo ágite. 8. Ego sum pastor bonus, et cognósco oves meas, et cognóscunt me meae. 9. Ducam te ad montem sanctum meum. 10. Deus mittet nobis lucem suam et veritátem. 11. Pastórem qui oves suas custódit laudámus. 12. María est Regína Confessórum et Mártyrum et Angelórum. 13. Soror mea parva me amat. 14. Osténde mihi vias tuas, Domine. 15. Montes pátriae nostrae sunt magni. 16. Sancti stant ante thronum Dei. 17. Tu solus es Sanctus, tu solus Dóminus. 18. Deus mihi dabit pacem suam. 19. Bonos et justos nunquam timémus. 20. Resurgémus post mortem, et ascendémus ad coelum.

SECTION XX.

Neuter Nouns of the 3rd Declension.

	NOMEN, a name.		OPUS, a work.	
	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
Nominative ..	**nomen**	**nómina**	**opus**	**ópera**
Vocative ..	**nomen**	**nómina**	**opus**	**ópera**
Accusative ..	**nomen**	**nómina**	**opus**	**ópera**
Genitive ..	**nóminis**	**nóminum**	**óperis**	**óperum**
Dative ..	**nómini**	**nomínibus**	**óperi**	**opéribus**
Ablative ..	**nómine**	**nomínibus**	**ópere**	**opéribus**

N.B.—The Accusative (singular and plural) of all Neuter nouns is the same as the Nominative.

* **ovis** and **mons** form genitive plural in **-ium, ovium, montium.** For rule, see foot-note, page 88.

EXERCISE XLII.

VOCABULARY.

corpus, córporis (*n.*), body.
mare,* maris (*n.*), sea (*Abl.* mari).
cor, cordis (*n.*), heart.
lumen, lúminis (*n.*), light.
altáre,* altáris (*n.*), altar.
os, oris (*n.*), mouth, face.

1. Laudáte Dóminum, púeri ; laudáte nomen Dómini. 2. María est stella maris. 3. Panis noster est Corpus Dómini. 4. Ángeli stant ante altáre Dómini. 5. Mare saepe timémus. 6. Benedíctus qui venit in nómine Dómini. 7. Laudábo Dóminum toto corde meo. 8. Lumen de Lúmine. 9. Dóminus est in corde tuo. 10. Dóminum laudábo ore meo. 11. Lúmina in coelis videmus. 12. Laudábo ópera Dei. 13. Amámus et timémus Sanctum Nomen tuum, Dómine. 14. Cor mílitis est pium et bonum. 15. In nómine Dómini nostri Jesu Christi surgo. 16. Laudábimus nomen Dómini. 17. Soróres meae habent multa nómina. 18. Surgémus et stábimus ante altáre Dei. 19. Aquae maris sunt latae et profúndae. 20. Adorámus et benedícimus te, Dómine, Redémptor mundi.

EXERCISE XLIII.

VOCABULARY.

sanguis, sánguinis (*m.*), blood.
homo, hóminis (*m.*), a man.
crux, crucis (*f.*), a cross.
intra (Acc.), within.
spina, spinae, (*f.*), a thorn.
vulnus, vúlneris (*n.*), a wound.
latus, láteris (*n.*), a side.
abscóndere, to hide.
pendére, to hang.
laváre, to wash.

1. Adorámus Corpus et Sánguinem Christi. 2. Aqua láteris Christi, lava me. 3. Intra vúlnera tua abscónde me. 4. In horâ mortis meae voca me. 5. Et jube me veníre ad te. 6. Jesus Christus venit in mundum. 7. Adorámus vúlnera Christi. 8. Jesus Christus pendet in cruce pro hómine. 9. Jesus habet corónam spinárum. 10. Adorámus crucem sanctam Christi. 11. Coróna Christi habet multas spinas. 12. Adorámus vúlnera in látere Christi. 13. Corpus Dómini est panis noster. 14. Surgam et vadam ad patrem meum. 15. Córpora nostra in aquis maris lavábimus. 16. Púeri apériunt ora et cantant. 17. Hómines sunt peccatóres. 18. Miles habet vulnus in látere suo. 19. Crux stat in monte sancto. 20. Nomen Dómini semper amáre debémus.

* **mare** and **altar** form ablative singular in **-i, mari, altari,** and nominative and accusative plural in **-ia, maria, altaria.**

EXERCISE XLIV.

VOCABULARY.

tempus, témporis (*n.*), time.
caput, cápitis (*n.*), head.
signum, signi (*n.*), a sign.
robur, róboris (*n.*), strength.
solum (*adverb*), alone.
in (Abl.), among, in, on.
salus, salútis (*f.*), salvation, health.
sacérdos, sacerdótis (*m.*), a priest.
signáre, to sign.
adjutórium, adjutórii (*n.*), help.
fer (*Imperative*), bring.
per (Acc.), through, by.

1. Ave María, grátiâ plena, Dóminus tecum; benedícta tu in muliéribus. 2. Da robur, fer auxílium. 3. Per signum crucis ab inimícis nostris líbera nos, Dómine. 4. Sacérdos stat ante altáre. 5. Adjutórium nostrum est in nómine Dómini. 6. Jesus Christus venit per aquam et sánguinem: non in aquâ solâ, sed in aquâ et sánguine. 7. Sacérdos signat nos signo crucis. 8. Sácerdos dat nobis Corpus Dómini nostri. 9. In tempóribus perículi hómines semper clamant ad Deum. 10. Fer aquam ad me, serve. 11. Divínum auxílium manébit semper nobíscum. 12. Osténde nobis, Dómine, misericórdiam tuam. 13. Debémus nunquam timére ópera justórum. 14. Jesus habet corónam spinárum in cápite suo. 15. In Cruce Dómini nostri Jesu Christi est salus nostra. 16. Dóminus illuminátio mea et salus mea, quem timébo? 17. Sacerdótes stant ante altáre et grátias Deo agunt. 18. Per crucem sanctam tuam, líbera nos, Dómine. 19. Sácerdos surgit et stat ante altáre. 20. Lavábimus peccáta nostra in sánguine Agni. 21. Deus est robur et auxílium nostrum. 22. Pastóres oves in agris custódiunt. 23. Ópera Dei sunt bona et magna. 24. Quis non laudat pópulum bonum? 25. Líbera nos, Dómine, a malo et perículo.

SECTION XXI.

Adjectives of the 3rd Declension.

Adjectives of the 3rd Declension are declined very similarly to the nouns. The Masculine and Feminine endings are the same, and the Neuter differs only in the first three cases, and not always then. The majority of 3rd Declension Adjectives terminate in **-is** or **-ens.** The Ablative singular (all genders) ends in **-i,** and the Genitive Plural in **-ium.**

TRISTIS, sad.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neuter.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neuter.*
Nominative ..	**tristis**	**triste**	**tristes**	**tristia**
Vocative ..	**tristis**	**triste**	**tristes**	**tristia**
Accusative ..	**tristem**	**triste**	**tristes**	**tristia**
Genitive ..	**tristis**	**tristis**	**tristium**	**tristium**
Dative	**tristi**	**tristi**	**tristibus**	**tristibus**
Ablative ..	**tristi**	**tristi**	**tristibus**	**tristibus**

EXERCISE XLV.

VOCABULARY.

dulcis, sweet.	**amábilis**, amiable, lovable.
fortis, brave.	**fidélis**, faithful.
omnis, every, all.	**húmilis**, humble.
brevis, short.	**gens, gentis** (*f.*), gentile, nation.

1. Vita nostra est brevis. 2. Mílites sunt fortes qui pugnant pro nobis. 3. Laudáte Dóminum, omnes gentes, laudáte Dóminum, omnes pópuli. 4. Ómnia ópera Dei sunt bona. 5. Amámus Maríam, Matrem amábilem. 6. Cur es tristis? 7. Da nobis ómnibus, O Dómine, vitam aetérnam. 8. Per ómnia saécula saeculórum. 9. Omnes hómines possunt laudáre Deum. 10. Ancíllae Dómini sunt húmiles. 11. O dulcis Virgo María, ora pro nobis. 12. O Jesu dulcis, O Jesu pie. 13. María est auxílium fidélium. 14. Ánimae fidélium sunt in pace. 15. Líbera nos, Dómine, ab ómnibus periculis. 16. Brevem vitam in terrâ habémus. 17. Omnes púeri ludunt in agris. 18. Puéllas dulces et amábiles amámus. 19. Omnes gentes laudant Dóminum. 20. Ancíllae regínae sunt fidéles et húmiles.

POTENS, powerful.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neuter.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neuter.*
Nominative ..	**potens**	**potens**	**poténtes**	**poténtia**
Vocative ..	**potens**	**potens**	**poténtes**	**poténtia**
Accusative ..	**poténtem**	**potens**	**poténtes**	**poténtia**
Genitive ..	**poténtis**	**poténtis**	**poténtium**	**poténtium**
Dative	**poténti**	**poténti**	**poténtibus**	**poténtibus**
Ablative ..	**poténti**	**poténti**	**poténtibus**	**poténtibus**

EXERCISE XLVI.

VOCABULARY.

prudens, prudent.
sápiens, wise.
crédere, to believe.
omnípotens, all-powerful, almighty.
clemens, merciful, kind.
creátor, creatóris (*m.*), creator.

1. Deus est omnípotens. 2. María est clemens. 3. Ópera Dei sunt poténtia. 4. Beáti sunt hómines qui sunt prudéntes. 5. María est clemens et sápiens. 6. Vox sacerdótis est dulcis et potens. 7. Prudéntes sunt hómines qui in viis Dómini ámbulant. 8. Deus est Pater omnípotens. 9. Omnes ángeli prótegent nos. 10. Verba magístri sunt prudéntia et poténtia. 11. Credo in Deum, Patrem omnipoténtem, Creatórem coeli et terrae. 12. Christus sedet ad déxteram Dei, Patris omnipoténtis. 13. Deus regnábit per ómnia saécula. 14. Omnes sacerdótes stabant ante altáre. 15. Ad Maríam, Vírginem poténtem, clamámus. 16. Custódi ómnia verba Dei in corde tuo. 17. Magístri non sunt cleméntes, quia culpant púeros bonos. 18. Laudámus mártyres qui sunt fortes et boni. 19. Vocem poténtem magístri audíre póssumus. 20. Laudámus verba sapiéntia tua.

FELIX, happy.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neuter.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neuter.*
Nominative ..	felix	felix	felíces	felícia
Vocative ..	felix	felix	felíces	felícia
Accusative ..	felícem	felix	felíces	felícia
Genitive ..	felícis	felícis	felícium	felícium
Dative	felíci	felíci	felícibus	felícibus
Ablative ..	felíci	felíci	felícibus	felícibus

EXERCISE XLVII.

VOCABULARY.

supplex, suppliant.
velox, swift.
audax, bold.
infélix, unhappy.
si, if.
cívitas, civitátis (*f.*), a city.
núntius, núntii (*m.*), a messenger.
avis, avis (*f.*), a bird.
statim, immediately.
voláre, to fly.

1. Si felix es, cur fles ? 2. Puéllae súpplices orant ante altáre. 3. Si audáces estis, montem statim ascendétis. 4. Núntius velox veniébat in civitátem. 5. Ancíllae erant infelíces quia pater in bello pugnábat. 6. Aves velóces in coelis volábant. 7. Alae avis sunt pulchrae. 8. Si laetus es, non debes flere. 9. In bello mílites sunt fortes, sed in pace mortem saepe timent. 10. Verba tua sunt audácia, sed cor tuum est malum. 11. Si sápiens es, ad civitátem statim vénies. 12. Mittam núntios velóces ad regínam. 13. Regína debet adjuváre mulíeres súpplices. 14. Puéllae sunt infelíces et orant ante altáre. 15. Pastóres custodiébant oves et agnos in agris. 16. Mílites sunt audáces et fortes. 17. Tu es audax sed non sápiens. 18. Mulíeres flebant quia vúlnera mílitum vidébant. 19. Aves volant, sed oves ámbulant. 20. Verba sacerdótis sunt sapiéntia.

SECTION XXII.

Fourth Declension Nouns.

	GRADUS, a step (*m.*).		GENU, a knee (*n.*).	
	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
Nominative ..	**gradus**	**gradus**	**genu**	**génua**
Vocative ..	**gradus**	**gradus**	**genu**	**génua**
Accusative ..	**gradum**	**gradus**	**genu**	**génua**
Genitive ..	**gradus**	**gráduum**	**genus**	**génuum**
Dative	**grádui**	**grádibus**	**genu**	**génibus**
Ablative ..	**gradu**	**grádibus**	**genu**	**génibus**

EXERCISE XLVIII.

VOCABULARY.

fluctus (4),* a wave (*m.*).†
conspéctus (4), sight (*m.*).
manus (4), a hand (*f.*).
vultus (4), a face (*m.*).
exércitus (4), an army, host (*m.*).
spíritus (4), breath, spirit (*m.*).
pónere, to place, lay down.
suscípere, to receive, undertake.
cornu (4), a horn (*n.*).

1. Glória Patri et Fílio et Spíritui Sancto. 2. Dómine Jesu, súscipe spíritum meum. 3. Cur est vultus tuus tristis ? 4. Pater, in manus tuas comméndo spíritum meum. 5. Exér-

* In future (4) after a noun denotes 4th Declension, and (2) 2nd Declension.

† Most nouns of the 4th Declension are masculine in gender.

citus Mártyrum Deum laudat. 6. Apóstolus erat plenus Spíritu Sancto. 7. Sumus mílites in exércitu Christi. 8. Súscipe, Dómine, oratiónem meam. 9. Sacérdos ponit manus suas in capite puéllae parvae. 10. Stamus in conspéctu Dómini. 11. Exércitus Dómini vadunt ad bellum. 12. Cras vidébimus exércitum. 13. Cur times fluctus maris ? 14. Vultus mártyris erat tristis sed fortis. 15. Dóminus vobíscum: et cum spíritu tuo. 16. Fluctus maris puéllas parvas terrent. 17. Dóminus súscipit oratiónes nostras. 18. Laudámus exércitum mártyrum. 19. Justórum ánimae in manu Dei sunt. 20. Puélla parva tenébat avem mórtuam in manu suâ.

SECTION XXIII.

Fifth Declension Nouns.

DIES, a day (*m.* and *f.*).*

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nominative	dies	dies
Vocative	dies	dies
Accusative	diem	dies
Genitive	diéi	diérum
Dative	diéi	diébus
Ablative	die	diébus

EXERCISE XLIX.

VOCABULARY.

fácies (5), face (*f.*). **res** (5), a thing, matter (*f.*).
fides (5), faith (*f.*). **spes** (5), hope (*f.*).

1. Ad Maríam, spem nostram, clamámus. 2. Fides tua est bona. 3. Apóstoli vidébant fáciem Dómini. 4. Multae res nos terrent. 5. Exércitus Dómini sunt magni. 6. Quis fáciem Dei potest vidére ? 7. Manébamus in spe Dómini. 8. Fides tua erat salus tua. 9. Jesus vidébat fidem mulíeris. 10. Puéllae parvae timent multas res. 11. Deus cognóscit fidem pópuli. 12. Sacérdos ponébat manus suas in cápite púeri parvi. 13. In-

* All 5th Declension nouns are feminine, except dies which is common in the singular, masculine in the plural.

cénsum benedíctum ascéndit ad Dóminum. 14. Oratiónes nostrae sicut incénsum in conspéctu Dómini sunt. 15. Sacérdos levat manus ad coelum. 16. Ángelus stat a déxterâ altáris incénsi. 17. Súscipe, sancte Pater, omnípotens, aetérne Deus, oratiónes nostras. 18. Christus véniet cum glóriâ judicáre vivos et mórtuos. 19. Credo in Spíritum sanctum. 20. Propter nos hómines, et propter nostram salútem Christus descéndit de coelis.

EXERCISE L.

Vocabulary.

baptizáre, to baptize.
cathólicus (*adj.*), catholic.
gaudére, to rejoice.
conturbáre, to disquiet.
laetificáre, to make glad.
réquies, requiéi or **requiétis** (*f.*), rest.
Ecclésia (1), Church (*f.*).
quarē ? wherefore ? why ?
emíttere, to send forth.
juvéntus, juventútis (*f.*), youth.

1. Baptízo te in nómine Patris et Fílii et Spíritus Sancti. 2. Réquiem aetérnam dona mórtuis, Dómine. 3. Credo in Sanctam Cathólicam Ecclésiam. 4. Emítte lucem tuam, et veritátem tuam. 5. Deus laetíficat juventútem meam. 6. Quarē tristis es, ánima mea, et quarē contúrbas me ? 7. Spera in Deo, qui est salus vultus tui. 8. Adjutórium nostrum est in nómine Dómini. 9. Deus te ducet ad vitam aetérnam. 10. Deus est Creátor terrae. 11. Ego sum servus, et fílius soróris tuae. 12. Stamus in conspéctu omnis pópuli. 13. Ante lucem ad civitátem veniémus. 14. Tu es sacérdos in aetérnum. 15. Dómine Jesu Christe, líbera ánimas ómnium fidélium. 16. In princípio erat Verbum. 17. Ópera Dómini laetíficant cor meum. 18. Gaudéte, púeri, gaudéte et cantáte. 19. Sacérdos te baptizábit. 20. Deus emíttet lucem sanctam suam in Ecclésiam Cathólicam. 21. Deus illúminat óculos omnis hóminis qui venit in mundum. 22. Vidébimus glóriam Patris. 23. Ángeli gaudent et Dóminum laudant. 24. Ángelus Dómini descéndit de coelo. 25. Sacérdos levábit manus suas et benedícet pópulum. 26. Omnes gentes laudábunt Maríam. 27. Veníte, fílii, audíte me; docébo vos amórem Dómini. 28. Deus amat húmilem ancíllam. 29. Petrus et Paulus docent nos ópera Dómini. 30. Da pacem, Dómine, in diébus nostris, quia tu solus pugnas pro nobis.

SECTION XXIV.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses of 1st Conjugation.

Perfect.		*Pluperfect.*	
amávi	I have loved, *or* I loved	**amáveram**	I had loved
amavísti	thou hast loved, *or* thou lovedst	**amáveras**	thou hadst loved
amávit	he has loved, *or* he loved	**amáverat**	he had loved
amávimus	we have loved, *or* we loved	**amaverámus**	we had loved
amavístis	you have loved, *or* you loved	**amaverátis**	you had loved
amavérunt	they have loved, *or* they loved	**amáverant**	they had loved

N.B.—The perfect tense sometimes contracts in the 2nd person singular and plural, and in the 3rd person plural: **amasti, amastis, amarunt.**

EXERCISE LI.

VOCABULARY.

verus (*adj.*), true. **rex, regis** (*m.*), king.
eum, him. **domus** (4),* house (*f.*).

1. Dóminus amávit eum et ornávit eum. 2. Deus laetificávit juventútem meam. 3. Vera lux illumináv it mundum, et déxtera Dei exaltávit me. 4. Laudáveram ómnia ópera Dómini. 5. Quis judicáverat pópulum? 6. De profúndis clamávi ad te, Dómine. 7. Levávi óculos meos ad montes. 8. Justi ambulavérunt in viis Dómini. 9. Sacérdos signáverat nos signo crucis. 10. Ancíllae ornáverant altáre Dei. 11. Cantaverátis Dómino. 12. Deus adjúverat† eum et liberáverat eum. 13. Quis vocávit me? 14. Laudavísti ancíllas et puéllas. 15. Cur culpavístis servos vestros? 16. Mílites pugnáverant pro pátriâ. 17. Rex liberávit pópulum suum. 18. In Deo erat vita, et vita erat lux hóminum. 19. Domus Dómini est pulchra. 20. Veni, Sancte Spíritus, et emítte de coelo lucem sanctam tuam.

* **domus** forms Ablative Singular from 2nd Declension: **domo.**
† The Perfect of **ádjuvo** is **adjúvi**, hence Pluperfect **adjúveram.**

SECTION XXIV (*Continued*).

Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses of MONÉRE and ESSE.

Perfect.	*Pluperfect.*	*Perfect.*	*Pluperfect.*
mónui	**monúeram**	**fui**	**fúeram**
monuísti	**monúeras**	**fuísti**	**fúeras**
mónuit	**monúerat**	**fuit**	**fúerat**
monúimus	**monuerámus**	**fúimus**	**fuerámus**
monuístis	**monuerátis**	**fuístis**	**fuerátis**
monuérunt	**monúerant**	**fuérunt**	**fúerant**

The English of **fui** is *I was*, or *I have been ;* of **fueram**, *I had been.*

EXERCISE LII.

VOCABULARY.

vigiláre, to watch. **aedificáre**, to build.

1. **Fémina** mónuit puéllas. 2. Rex fuit tristis. 3. Magíster dócuit púeros. 4. Dóminus aedificávit domum. 5. Servi vigilavérunt. 6. Puélla ténuit avem mórtuam in manu suâ. 7. Quis monúerat regínam ? 8. Quem timuístis ? 9. Fúeram laeta. 10. Quid timuístis ? 11. Cujus servum culpavísti ? 12. Ancíllae fuérunt bonae et laetae. 13. Verba nuntii fuérunt audácia. 14. Servi vigilavérunt in jánuâ ecclésiae. 15. Déxtera Dómini ténuit me. 16. Véritas Dómini manet in aetérnum. 17. Dóminus nos judicávit. 18. Verba regínae terrúerant puéllam. 19. Quid regína mónuit ? 20. Cur tristis fuísti ?

SECTION XXV.

Future-Perfect Tenses of AMÁRE, MONÉRE, and ESSE.

amávero	**monúero**	**fúero**
amáveris	**monúeris**	**fúeris**
amáverit	**monúerit**	**fúerit**
amavérimus	**monuérimus**	**fuérimus**
amavéritis	**monuéritis**	**fuéritis**
amáverint	**monúerint**	**fúerint**

English: *I shall have loved, I shall have advised, I shall have been*, etc.

N.B.—The Future-Perfect tense is often used after **si**, *if*, and **nisi**, *unless*, but the English idiom requires a present or simple future.

EXERCISE LIII.

VOCABULARY.

vanus (*adj.*), vain.
in vanum, in vain.
nisi, unless, but, except.
laboráre, to work, labour.
frustra, in vain.
heréditas, hereditátis (*f.*), heritage.

1. Nisi Dóminus aedificáverit domum, in vanum laboravérunt qui aedíficant domum. 2. Nisi Dóminus illumináverit óculos tuos, non vidébis ópera Dei. 3. Ecce, fílii sunt heréditas Dómini. 4. Vanum est vobis súrgere ante lucem. 5. Pax est in virtúte Dómini. 6. Si vos frustra monúero, vos púniam. 7. Quis aedificávit civitátem? 8. Sancti laboravérunt in nómine Dómini. 9. Multi servi et minístri aedificavérunt civitátem. 10. Cívitas est heréditas pópuli. 11. Ángelus Dómini nuntiávit Maríae. 12. Ecce nunc benedícite Dóminum, omnes servi Dómini, qui statis in óstio domus Dei nostri. 13. Ángeli custódient nos in ómnibus viis nostris. 14. Deus me liberávit, et adjuvábit me in ómnibus perículis. 15. Clamábit ad me et ego exaúdiam eum. 16. In te, Dómine, sperávi. 17. Pastóres vigilábant in agris. 18. Deus nobis signum dabit. 19. Nisi Dóminus aedificáverit civitátem, hómines in vanum laboravérunt. 20. Ego baptízo vos in aquâ; Dóminus vos baptizábit in Spíritu Sancto.

SECTION XXVI.

Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of RÉGERE.

Perfect.	*Future-Perfect.*	*Pluperfect.*
rexi	**réxero**	**réxeram**
rexísti	**réxeris**	**réxeras**
rexit	**réxerit**	**réxerat**
réximus	**rexérimus**	**rexerámus**
rexístis	**rexéritis**	**rexerátis**
rexérunt	**réxerint**	**réxerant**

N.B.—The Perfect Tense of most 3rd Conjugation verbs is irregular, and usually involves a change of stem. The present stem may be found by removing the **-ere** of the Infinitive; thus the stem of **régere** is **reg-**. Most verbs whose stem ends in **g** or **c** change that letter into **x** to form the perfect stem, as in **régere**. The perfect of **dilígere** is **dilexi**.

In Exercise LIV only verbs which form their perfect in **x** are used.

EXERCISE LIV.

1. Deus duxit me ad montem sanctum suum. 2. Regína rexit in civitáte. 3. Quid dixísti, O puer? 4. Christus resurréxit a mórtuis. 5. Pastor bonus diléxit oves suas. 6. Deus benedíxit pópulum suum. 7. Cur servus puéllam ad agros dúxerat? 8. Sacérdos púeros benedíxerat. 9. Non dimíttam te, nisi benedíxeris me. 10. Ángelus dixit ad eum, Ego sum Gábriel, qui sto ante Deum. 11. María dixit, Exaltávit húmiles Dóminus. 12. Minístri frustra vigilavérunt. 13. Deus nos liberávit a manu inimicórum nostrórum. 14. Vobis dixi, Dilígite inimícos vestros. 15. Servi duxérunt púeros ad civitátem. 16. Vidébitis signa in coelo. 17. Bonus pastor ánimam suam dat pro óvibus suis. 18. Ómnes gentes gaudébant in nómine Dómini. 19. Si púeros ad agros duxéritis, vos laudábo. 20. Regína réxerat multos annos in civitáte.

SECTION XXVII.

Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of AUDÍRE.

Perfect.	*Future-Perfect.*	*Pluperfect.*
audívi	**audívero**	**audíveram**
audivísti	**audíveris**	**audíveras**
audívit	**audíverit**	**audíverat**
audívimus	**audivérimus**	**audiverámus**
audivístis	**audivéritis**	**audiverátis**
audivérunt	**audíverint**	**audíverant**

EXERCISE LV.

VOCABULARY.

dolor, dolóris (*m.*), grief, sorrow.
frater, fratris (*m.*), a brother.
flumen, flúminis (*n.*), a river.
superáre, to overcome.
manducáre, to eat.
próximus (2), a neighbour.
ímpetus (4), power, attack.
habitáre, to dwell, live.

1. Nisi Dóminus custodíverit domum, frustra vígilat qui custódit domum. 2. Pópulus audívit vocem regis. 3. Manducávimus panem dolóris. 4. Pópulus habitáverat in civitáte. 5. Propter fratres meos et próximos dicam pacem de te. 6. Quis est próximus meus? 7. Magíster punívérat púeros

malos. 8. Quis custodívit jánuam? 9. Non audiverámus verba regínae. 10. Mílites custodíverant jánuam domus. 11. Quis fratrem meum, qui tristis est, adjuvábit? 12. Superávimus inimícos nostros. 13. Ímpetus flúminis laetíficat civitátem Dei. 14. Quarē punivísti púeros qui ludébant in agris? 15. Próximos nostros amáre debémus. 16. Manducámus panem angelórum. 17. Ecce mittam ángelum meum ante fáciem tuam, qui ducet te in vias pacis. 18. Docéte omnes gentes, et baptizáte in nómine Patris et Fílii et Spíritus Sancti. 19. Ángelus dixit muliéribus, Jesus surréxit, sicut dixit. 20. Mulíeres vigilábant in jánuâ domus. 21. Multi sancti surrexérunt a mórtuis. 22. Quis audívit vocem mulíeris? 23. Quid mandúcas? 24. Habitabámus in civitáte cum frátribus nostris. 25. Fluctus maris terrúerant omnes mulíeres. 26. Non audiverámus eum: quid díxerat? 27. Dolor mulíerum erat magnus. 28. Ímpetus flúminis térruit puéllas. 29. Cras vidébimus fratrem nostrum et sorórem tuam. 30. Quem mittes ad civitátem? Mittam núntium velócem.

SECTION XXVIII.

Some 2nd Conjugation Verbs with Irregular Perfects.

vidére, *perfect* **vidi**.	**jubére**, *perfect* **jussi**.
sedére, *perfect* **sedi**.	**manére**, *perfect* **mansi**.
flere, *perfect* **flevi**.	**pendére**, *perfect* **pepéndi**.

EXERCISE LVI.

VOCABULARY.

portáre, to carry.	**donum** (2), a gift, offering.
ignis, ignis (*m.*), fire.	**arbor, árboris** (*f.*), a tree.
accéndere, to kindle.	**replére**, to fill.

1. Mulíeres sedérunt et flevérunt. 2. Veni Sancte Spíritus, reple corda fidélium. 3. Accénde in nobis ignem amóris tui. 4. Vídimus mílites in agris. 5. Jesus pepéndit in árbore crucis. 6. Cur mansísti in viâ? 7. Regína jussit núntium vádere ad civitátem. 8. Multae árbores in agris sunt. 9. Cur flevísti? 10. Regína vidit dolórem mulíerum. 11. Spíritus Sanctus replet corda nostra. 12. Ignem in móntibus accendémus. 13. Cum Sanctis tuis laudábo te in saécula saeculórum. 14. Puéllae dona mittébant ad regínam magnam. 15. Quid portas? Porto librum et multas epístolas. 16. Habitámus in adjutório Dei. 17. Dóminus custódiet nos ut pupíllam óculi, et sub umbrâ

alárum suárum próteget nos. 18. Stabámus in umbrâ árborum in agris. 19. Divínum auxílium manébit semper nobíscum. 20. Te laudámus, Dómine, Rex aetérnae glóriae.

Perfects of some common 3rd Conjugation Verbs.

míttere, *perfect* **misi.**	**cognóscere**, *perfect* **cognóvi.**
ágere, *perfect* **egi.**	**deféndere**, *perfect* **deféndi.**
relínquere, *perfect* **relíqui.**	**ascéndere**, *perfect* **ascéndi.**
scríbere, *perfect* **scripsi.**	**descéndere**, *perfect* **descéndi.**
convértere, *perfect* **convérti.**	**abscóndere**, *perfect* **abscóndi.**

EXERCISE LVII.

VOCABULARY.

porta (1), gate, door. **almus** (*adj.*), sweet, dear.

1. Quid scripsísti? 2. Jesus ascéndit in coelos. 3. Ángeli descendérunt ad terram. 4. Regína convértit óculos suos ad pópulum. 5. Pastor cognóvit oves suas. 6. Quid reliquísti in agro? 7. Deus misit ángelum suum ad Maríam. 8. Ave maris stella, Dei mater alma, ad te omnes gentes clamant. 9. Ancílla scripsit multas epístolas. 10. Quid abscondísti?

Some 4th Conjugation Verbs with Irregular Perfects.

veníre, *perfect* **veni.**	**aperíre**, *perfect* **apérui.**
salíre, *perfect* **sálui**, to leap.	**sentíre**, *perfect* **sensi**, to feel.

11. Núntii venérunt ad regínam. 12. Servi aperuérunt portas civitátis. 13. Puer dolórem sensit. 14. Cur venísti? 15. Púeri saluérunt in aquam. 16. Quis apéruit portam domus? 17. Ancílla grátias Deo egit. 18. Núntii ad regínam óculos suos convertérunt. 19. Ángeli nos ab omni perículo defendérunt. 20. Jesus venit judicáre vivos et mórtuos.

SECTION XXIX.

Present Passive of 1st and 2nd Conjugations.

amor	I am loved *or* being loved	**móneor**	I am advised *or* being advised
amáris	thou art loved, etc.	**monéris**	thou art advised, etc.
amátur	he is loved, etc.	**monétur**	he is advised, etc.
amámur	we are loved, etc.	**monémur**	we are advised, etc.
amámini	you are loved, etc.	**monémini**	you are advised, etc.
amántur	they are loved, etc.	**monéntur**	they are advised, etc.

EXERCISE LVIII.

VOCABULARY.

paúperes (*plur.*), the poor. **a** (*or* **ab**), *with Abl.*, by.

1. Amámur a matre nostrâ. 2. Púeri monéntur a magístro. 3. Exaltámur a Deo. 4. Paúperes adjuvántur a nobis. 5. Puéllae laudántur a regínâ. 6. María amátur ab ómnibus géntibus. 7. Conturbámini ab inimícis vestris. 8. Puéllae parvae terréntur verbis* magístri. 9. Núntius jubétur veníre ad regínam. 10. Deus timétur ab homínibus. 11. Oculi nostri illuminántur a Deo. 12. Adjuvámur a próximis nostris. 13. Paúperes adjuvántur a minístris regínae. 14. Verba regis nuntiántur pópulo. 15. Laudámur a magístris nostris. 16. Sapiéntes púeri non terréntur verbis magistrórum malórum. 17. Mulíeres laudántur a regínâ magnâ. 18. Epístola portátur a servo regínae. 19. Timémur a púeris parvis. 20. Rex vidétur a nobis. 21. Puéllae parvae terréntur flúctibus maris. 22. Liberámur a Deo. 23. Laudáris a magistro tuo. 24. Amor a matre meâ. 25. Timéris a fílio tuo. 26. Monémini a regínâ. 27. Adjuvámur ab ángelis. 28. Pecúnia datur paupéribus. 29. Culpáris a mulíere. 30. Puélla vocátur a matre suâ.

SECTION XXX.

Present Passive of 3rd and 4th Conjugations.

regor	**aúdior**
régeris	**audíris**
régitur	**audítur**
régimur	**audímur**
regímini	**audímini**
regúntur	**audiúntur**

EXERCISE LIX.

VOCABULARY.

quóniam, since, that.
caro, carnis (*f.*), flesh.
peccáre, to sin.
nimis, exceedingly.
nox, noctis (*f.*), night.
mandáre, to give charge to, entrust.
salutáre, salutáris (*n.*), salvation.
longitúdo, longitúdinis (*f.*), length.

* The preposition **ab**, *by*, is not inserted before things, only before persons: see page 114.

1. Protégimur ab ángelis. 2. Verba regínae audiúntur ab ómnibus. 3. Portae custodiúntur a servis. 4. Púeri puniúntur a magístro. 5. Núntius míttitur ad reginam. 6. Epístola scríbitur a puellâ parvâ. 7. Quóniam in me sperávit, liberábo eum: prótegam eum, quóniam cognóvit nomen meum. 8. Longitúdine diérum replébo eum. 9. Osténdam pópulo salutáre meum. 10. Quóniam Ángelis suis mandavit de te, non debes timére. 11. Vidérunt óculi mei salutáre tuum. 12. Terra régitur a rege. 13. Alma mater, tu es stella maris. 14. Portae a servis aperiúntur. 15. Puer sepelítur a muliéribus. 16. Nimis peccávimus in conspéctu Dómini. 17. Credo in resurrectiónem* carnis. 18. Nox est pulchra. 19. Peccávi nimis, meâ culpâ. 20. Ab Ángelis semper custodímur.

SECTION XXXI.

Imperfect Passive Tenses of all Four Conjugations.

amábar	monébar	regébar	audiébar
amabáris	monebáris	regebáris	audiebáris
amabátur	monebátur	regebátur	audiebátur
amabámur	monebámur	regebámur	audiebámur
amabámini	monebámini	regebámini	audiebámini
amabántur	monebántur	regebántur	audiebántur

N.B.—The English of the Imperfect passive is *I was being loved*, or *I used to be loved*, etc.

EXERCISE LX.

1. Protegebámur a servis regínae. 2. A magístro monebámini. 3. Terra a rege regebátur. 4. Timebáris a puéllis. 5. Paúperes adjuvabántur a muliéribus. 6. Portae a servis aperiebántur. 7. Fíliae regínae custodiebántur a milítibus. 8. Monebámur a rege et regínâ. 9. Laudabámur a magístro. 10. Núntius mittebátur ad regínam. 11. Puéllae parvae terrebántur flúctibus maris. 12. Servi liberabántur a regínâ. 13. Oves custodiébantur a pastóre. 14. Epístola scribebátur a púero parvo. 15. Puéllae felíces erant quóniam a matre laudabántur. 16. Servi mittebántur in civitátem a rege. 17. Deus laudátur ómnibus opéribus suis. 18. Dona dabántur paupéribus a fíliis† regis. 19. Exaltámur a Deo. 20. Ópera mánuum nostrárum sunt bona.

* In future words which can be guessed will not be given in the vocabularies.

† **Fíliis** is Dative or Ablative plural of **fílius**; the Dative and Ablative plural of **fília** being **fíliábus**.

SECTION XXXII.

Future Passive Tenses of all Four Conjugations.

amábor	**monébor**	**regar**	**aúdiar**
amáberis	**monéberis**	**regéris**	**audiéris**
amábitur	**monébitur**	**regétur**	**audiétur**
amábimur	**monébimur**	**regémur**	**audiémur**
amabímini	**monebímini**	**regémini**	**audiémini**
amabúntur	**monebúntur**	**regéntur**	**audiéntur**

N.B.—English : *I shall be loved,* etc.

EXERCISE LXI.

VOCABULARY.

inclináre, to incline.
vívere, to live.
dormíre, to sleep.
laudabilis, to be praised.
auris, auris (*f.*), an ear.
flos, floris (*m.*), a flower.
únitas, unitátis (*f.*), unity.
gloriosus, glorious.

1. Inclína, Dómine, ad me aurem tuam. 2. Qui vivit et regnat in unitáte Spíritus Sancti Deus, per ómnia saécula saeculórum. 3. Ánimae fidélium dórmiunt in pace. 4. Verba magístri audiéntur ab ómnibus. 5. Portae custodiéntur a milítibus et servis. 6. Protegémur ab Ángelis. 7. Deus ad nos aurem suam inclinábit. 8. Ab inimícis nostris conturbámur. 9. Paúperes adjuvabúntur a rege. 10. Portae aperiéntur a servis. 11. Vox tua non audiétur a pópulo. 12. Convérte nos, Deus, in viam pacis. 13. Deus nobis dabit noctem quiétam. 14. In manus tuas comméndo spíritum meum. 15. Véritas mea et misericórdia mea cum sanctis. 16. In nómine meo exaltábitur cornu sanctórum. 17. Ignem veni míttere in terram. 18. Dómine, Deus salútis meae, in die et nocte ad te clamávi. 19. Benedíctus es, Dómine, Deus patrum nostrórum, et laudábilis et gloriósus in saécula. 20. Benedíctum et sanctum est nomen glóriae tuae, et laudábile et gloriósum in saécula. 21. Ego clamávi, quóniam exaudivísti me, Deus: inclína aurem tuam, et exaúdi verba mea. 22. Sancti tui, Dómine, benedícent te, et glóriam regni tui dicent. 23. Regína ornábitur a puéllis multis flóribus. 24. Puélla parva dormiébat. 25. Vidébimus multos flores in agris. 26. Quis mittétur ad civitátem ? 27. Nomen Dómini laudábitur ab ómnibus géntibus. 28. Culpáberis a magístro. 29. Timéberis a púeris parvis. 30. Non laudábor a rege.

SECTION XXXIII.

Comparison of Adjectives.

Adjectives are compared in Latin by adding **-ior** to the stem to form the **Comparative,** and **-issimus** for the **Superlative :** *e.g.*, **longus** (stem **long-**), **lóngior, longíssimus ; tristis** (stem **trist-**), **trístior, tristíssimus.** The Comparative may be translated *sadder, rather sad,* or *too sad ;* the Superlative *saddest* or *very sad.*

Declension of Comparative.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neuter.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neuter.*
Nominative ..	**trístior**	**trístius**	**tristióres**	**tristióra**
Vocative ..	**trístior**	**trístius**	**tristióres**	**tristióra**
Accusative ..	**tristiórem**	**trístius**	**tristióres**	**tristióra**
Genitive ..	**tristióris**	**tristióris**	**tristiórum**	**tristiórum**
Dative ..	**tristióri**	**tristióri**	**tristióribus**	**tristióribus**
Ablative ..	**tristióre**	**tristióre**	**tristióribus**	**tristióribus**

N.B.—The superlative is declined in the same way as ordinary 2nd Declension Adjectives in **-us.**

EXERCISE LXII.

VOCABULARY.

altus, high, tall, deep.
purus, pure.
castus, chaste.
quam, than (*followed by same case as that which precedes it*).
paráre, to prepare.

1. Mater est trístior quam fília. 2. Núntium velocíssimum ad civitátem mittam. 3. Nox sicut dies illuminábitur. 4. Virgo prudentíssima, ora pro nobis. 5. Laudábimus nomen Dei Altíssimi. 6. Virgo castíssima et puríssima, ora pro nobis. 7. Soror est áltior quam* frater. 8. Parábit vias Domini. 9. Manus tua tenébit me. 10. Quid est púlchrius quam virtus ? 11. María est potentíssima ómnium sanctórum. 12. Quis est púlchrior quam soror tua ? 13. Quid est trístius quam fácies magístri ? 14. Frater tuus est sapientíssimus ómnium magistrórum.

* Direct comparison may also be expressed by the Ablative without quam—*e.g.*, **soror est áltior fratre.**

15. Rex est poténtior quam regína. 16. María est puríssima vírginum. 17. Paráte viam Dómini. 18. Vénimus ad altíssimum montem. 19. Soror tua est púlchrior quam mea. 20. Verba sacerdótis sunt sapientióra verbis magístri.

Some Adjectives which are Compared Irregularly.

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
bonus, good	**mélior,** better	**óptimus,** best
magnus, great	**major,** greater	**máximus,** greatest
parvus, little	**minor,** less	**mínimus,** least
malus, bad	**pejor,** worse	**péssimus,** worst
multus, much	**plus,*** more	**plúrimus,** most

N.B.—All Adjectives in **-er** form their Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the positive—*e.g.*, **miser, misérrimus ; pulcher, pulchérrimus,** etc.

EXERCISE LXIII.

VOCABULARY.

mundáre, to cleanse.
iníquus, unjust.
ímpius, wicked.
mundus, clean (*Adj.*).
creáre, to create.
ámplius (*comp. adverb*), yet more.
contra (Acc.), before, against, in front of.
aspérgere, to sprinkle.
hyssópum (2), hyssop.
iníquitas, iniquitátis (*f.*), iniquity.

1. Quóniam iniquitátem meam ego cognósco, et peccátum meum contra me est semper. 2. Aspérges me hyssópo et mundábor. 3. María est pulchérrima ómnium vírginum. 4. Ámplius lava me ab iniquitáte meâ. 5. Cor mundum crea in me, Dómine 6. Docébo iníquos vias tuas, et ímpii ad te converténtur. 7. Púeri sunt pejóres quam puéllae. 8. Liber meus est mínimus ómnium librórum. 9. Quid est mélius quam ambuláre in viis Dómini ? 10. Quis est óptimus puerórum ? 11. Peccávi, meâ culpâ, meâ culpâ, meâ maximâ culpâ. 12. Os meum, Dómine, annuntiábit laudem tuam. 13. In mánibus suis Ángeli portábunt te. 14. Laudabámur a magístro sapientíssimo. 15. Regína donum servo misérrimo dabat. 16. Non nobis, Dómine, non nobis, sed nómini tuo da glóriam. 17. Tu solus sanctus, tu solus es altíssimus, Jesu Christe. 18. O sanctíssima Virgo María, ora pro nobis. 19. Quis est péssimus ómnium servórum ? 20. Quis erat fidélior regi quam frater tuus ?

* **The comparative singular of multus is** found in the neuter only.

SECTION XXXIV.

Past Participles.

Latin has only one Past Participle, **the Passive Participle.** Verbs of the 1st Conjugation which are regular form their past participles by adding **-tus** to the present stem:

amáre (stem **ama-**), *past participle,* **amátus.**
laudáre (stem **lauda-**), *past participle,* **laudátus.**

Regular verbs of the 2nd Conjugation form their past participles by removing the **e** of the stem, and adding **-itus:**

monére (stem **mone-**), *past participle,* **mónitus.**
terrére (stem **terre-**), *past participle,* **térritus.**

These participles decline in the same way as ordinary 2nd Declension Adjectives in **-us**—*e.g.:*

puer térritus, *a terrified boy;* **puélla térrita,** *a terrified girl.*

The Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Passive Tenses of all Verbs are formed from the past participle and the verb **esse.**

Perfect Passive of AMÁRE.

amátus sum	I was loved, *or* I have been loved
amátus es	thou wast loved, *or* thou hast been loved
amátus est	he was loved, *or* he has been loved
amáti sumus	we were loved, *or* we have been loved
amáti estis	you were loved, *or* you have been loved
amáti sunt	they were loved, *or* they have been loved

EXERCISE LXIV.

VOCABULARY.

bíbere, to drink. **potéstas, potestátis** (*f.*), power.

1. Dixit Jesus discípulis suis, Data est mihi omnis potéstas in coelo et in terrâ. 2. Puéllae parvae amátae sunt a matre et patre. 3. Quis culpátus est a magístro? 4. Cur laudátus es a regínâ? 5. Dixit Jesus, Qui mandúcat meam carnem, et bibit meum sánguinem, in me manet, et qui mandúcat me, vivet propter me. 6. Opus púeri a magístro laudátum est. 7. Verba regínae culpáta sunt a rege. 8. Conturbáti sumus ab inimícis nostris. 9. Pecúnia data est paupéribus a puéllis. 10. Verba regínae nuntiáta sunt regi a servo.

Perfect Passive of MONÉRE.

mónitus sum	I was advised, *or* have been advised
mónitus es	thou wast advised, *or* hast been advised
mónitus est	he was advised, *or* has been advised
móniti sumus	we were advised, *or* have been advised
móniti estis	you were advised, *or* have been advised
móniti sunt	they were advised, *or* have been advised

11. Púeri térriti sunt verbis magístri. 12. Féminae a regínâ mónitae sunt. 13. Domus aedificáta est a fratre meo. 14. Puéllae parvae térritae sunt flúctibus maris. 15. Pópulus a rege mónitus est. 16. Púeri signo crucis a sacerdóte signáti sunt. 17. Cor meum et caro mea gaudebant in Deo vivo. 18. Exaltáta est sancta Dei Mater. 19. Hódie María Virgo ad coelos ascéndit; gaudéte, quia cum Christo regnat in aetérnum. 20. Benedíctus es, Dómine, in firmaménto coeli, et laudábilis et gloriósus in saécula.

SECTION XXXV.

Future-Perfect and Pluperfect Passive of AMÁRE and MONÉRE.

Future-Perfect.	*Pluperfect.*	*Future-Perfect.*	*Pluperfect.*
amátus ero	**amátus eram**	**mónitus ero**	**mónitus eram**
amátus eris	**amátus eras**	**mónitus eris**	**mónitus eras**
amátus erit	**amátus erat**	**mónitus erit**	**mónitus erat**
amáti érimus	**amáti erámus**	**móniti érimus**	**móniti erámus**
amáti éritis	**amáti erátis**	**móniti éritis**	**móniti erátis**
amáti erunt	**amáti erant**	**móniti erunt**	**móniti erant**

N.B.—English of Future-Perfect Passive, *I shall have been loved*, etc. English of Pluperfect Passive, *I had been loved*, etc.

EXERCISE LXV.

VOCABULARY.

bene (*adverb*), well.	**doctus**, *past part. of* **docére.**
male (*adverb*), badly.	**visus**, *past part. of* **vidére.**
juxta (Acc.), near.	**jussus**, *past part. of* **jubére.**

1. Núntius jussus est veníre ad regínam. 2. Púeri a magístro bene docti sunt. 3. Rex visus est a fratre meo. 4. Male doctus

es. 5. Et ecce Ángelus Dómini stabat juxta pastóres. 6. Ángeli dixérunt, Glória in altíssimis Deo et in terrâ pax homínibus bonae voluntátis. 7. Regína visa erat ab ómnibus puéllis. 8. Nisi a regínâ mónitus eris, ad regem non póteris veníre. 9. Quis doctus erat a magístro ? 10. Visi eramus a muliéribus. 11. Nisi ad regínam venéritis, non adjuvabímini. 12. Stabat Mater dolorósa juxta crucem. 13. Dícite nobis, púeri, quid vidístis in viis ? 14. A fílio minístri bene doctus eras. 15. Multae árbores in agris visae sunt. 16. Domus male aedificáta erat. 17. Bene mónitus eris. 18. Jussus es ad me veníre. 19. Visus es a me. 20. Bene docti erátis.

SECTION XXXVI.

Past Participles of 3rd and 4th Conjugation Verbs.

The past participles of 3rd Conjugation Verbs are mostly irregular. **Régere** has past participle **rectus,** and most verbs whose stem ends in **g** or **c** have **-ctus** in the past participle—*e.g.*, **dícere, dictus ; dúcere, ductus ; resúrgere, resurréctus,** etc.

Fourth Conjugation Verbs regularly form their past participles in **-itus,** as **audíre, audítus ; punire, punítus ;** but **a few are** irregular—*e.g.*, **sepelíre, sepúltus ; aperíre, apértus.**

EXERCISE LXVI.

VOCABULARY.

relíctus, *past part. of* **relínquere.**
cógnitus, *past part. of* **cognóscere.**
convérsus, *past part. of* **convértere.**
victus, *past part. of* **vincere.**
missus, *past part. of* **míttere.**
scriptus, *past part. of* **scríbere.**
actus, *past part. of* **ágere.**
paratus, ready.

1. Núntius missus est ad civitátem. 2. Liber ad regínam missus est. 3. Multae epístolae scriptae sunt. 4. Grátiae Deo actae sunt. 5. Púeri mali puníti erant. 6. Servi mórtui sepúlti erant. 7. Óculi ómnium ad regem convérsi erant. 8. Ovis a pastóre suo cógnita est. 9. Libri a fratre meo scripti sunt. 10. Verba regínae ab ómnibus audíta sunt. 11. Ánimae fidélium in vias pacis ductae sunt. 12. Portae civitátis a servis apértae erant. 13. Libri in agris relícti sunt. 14. Puélla a mulíere vocáta erat. 15. Parátum est cor meum, Dómine. 16. Si vocábor a féminâ, non aúdiam. 17. Stella in coelo a pastóribus visa est. 18. Servus ad regem ductus erat. 19. Hódie epístola scripta erit. 20. Conturbáti sumus ab inimícis nostris.

SECTION XXXVII.

Personal Pronouns.

	First Person.		*Second Person.*		*Third Person.*
	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*	*Singular and Plural.*
Nominative	ego	nos	tu	vos	—
Vocative ..	—	—	tu	vos	—
Accusative ..	me	nos	te	vos	se
Genitive ..	mei	nostri*	tui	vestri*	sui
Dative ..	mihi	nobis	tibi	vobis	sibi
Ablative ..	me	nobis	te	vobis	se

N.B.—**se** is the **Reflexive** 3rd Personal Pronoun, and means **himself, herself, itself,** *or* **themselves.**

EXERCISE LXVII.

VOCABULARY.

nemo, néminis,† no one.
étiam, even, also.
hic (*adverb*), here.
memor, mémoris (*Adj.*), mindful (*followed by Genitive*).
immemor, forgetful (*Genitive*).

1. Ego sum resurréctio et vita: qui credit in me, etiam si mórtuus fúerit, vivet. 2. Dóminus est memor nostri. 3. Quis immemor vestri erit? 4. Tibi grátias ágimus, Dómine, propter magnam glóriam tuam. 5. Quis laudat se? 6. Nemo semper culpat se. 7. Ómnia óptima sibi semper dat. 8. Nemo est immemor sui. 9. Dómine, bonum est nobis hic esse. 10. Levavérunt óculos suos, sed néminem vidérunt, nisi solum Jesum. 11. Dóminus nos ducet in montem sanctíssimum suum. 12. Tibi dabo multa dona. 13. Mulíeres erant immémores sui. 14. Puer vidit se in aquâ flúminis. 15. Quis mihi librum dabit? 16. Te hic cras vidébimus. 17. Orábo pro vobis. 18. Nemo est memor mei. 19. Memor tui ero. 20. Soror mea ad te cras véniet.

* The forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used after numbers, or adjectives denoting number—*e.g.*, **multi nostrum,** *many of us;* **tres vestrum,** *three of you.* This is called the **Partitive Genitive.** The forms **nostri** and **vestri** are used for the **Objective Genitive.**

† The Genitive of **nemo** is rarely used.

Pronouns (*Continued*).

Third Person.

	he, she, it.					
	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nominative ..	**is***	**ea**	**id**	**ei**	**eae**	**ea**
Accusative ..	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eos**	**eas**	**ea**
Genitive ..	**ejus**	**ejus**	**ejus**	**eórum**	**eárum**	**eórum**
Dative ..	**ei**	**ei**	**ei**	**eis**	**eis**	**eis**
Ablative ..	**eo**	**ea**	**eo**	**eis**	**eis**	**eis**

EXERCISE LXVIII.

VOCABULARY.

adésse, to be present, at hand. **offéndere,** to dash, stumble.

1. Si ambuláverit in nocte, offéndit, quia lux non est in eo. 2. Magíster adest, et vocat te. 3. Jesus vocávit eum ad se. 4. Si veritátem dico vobis, quare non créditis mihi† ? 5. Dicunt ei, Dómine, veni et vide. 6. Dicit eis, Ecce homo. 7. In mundo erat, et mundus eum non cognóvit. 8. Deo grátias agam in conspéctu omnis pópuli ejus. 9. Dóminus exaúdiet me, si clamávero ad eum. 10. Multi dicunt, Quis osténdit nobis bona ? 11. Grátias ágimus Deo propter magnam glóriam ejus. 12. Mittémus núntium ad eos. 13. Per signum crucis, líbera eos, Dómine. 14. Deum adorámus et Fílium ejus. 15. Apéruit os suum et docébat eos. 16. Vídimus mulíeres et fílias eárum. 17. Si puer bonus erit, librum ei dabo. 18. Qui mandúcat meam carnem, et bibit meum sánguinem, in me manet, et ego in eo. 19. Dixit ei Jesus, Quia vidísti me, Thoma, credidísti: beati qui non vidérunt, et credidérunt. 20. Stabant juxta crucem Jesu‡ mater ejus, et soror matris ejus María Cléophae, et María Magdaléne.

* **is, ea, id,** may also be used as a demonstrative adjective = *that : e.g.*, **is puer,** *that boy.*

† **Credo** is usually followed by the dative case.

‡ **Jesus** has genitive **Jesu** ; it is declined according to the Greek.

SECTION XXXVIII.

The Demonstrative HIC.

	HIC, HAEC, HOC: this.					
	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nominative ..	hic	haec	hoc	hi	hae	haec
Accusative ..	hunc	hanc	hoc	hos	has	haec
Genitive ..	hujus	hujus	hujus	horum	harum	horum
Dative ..	huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
Ablative ..	hoc	hac	hoc	his	his	his

N.B.—**Hic** is used both **substantivally** and **adjectivally**—*e.g.*, **hic**= *this man;* **hic puer**=*this boy;* **haec**=*these things,* or *this;* **haec opera**= *these works.*

EXERCISE LXIX.

1. Hic est panis qui de coelis descéndit. 2. Qui mandúcat hunc panem vivet in aetérnum. 3. Hoc est testimónium, quóniam vitam aetérnam dedit nobis Deus. 4. Haec vita in Fílio ejus est. 5. Hic est qui venit per aquam et sánguinem, Jesus Christus: non in aquâ solum, sed in aquâ et sanguine. 6. Multa non sunt scripta in libro hoc. 7. Hi sunt qui te amant. 8. Quis est hic puer qui haec dicit? 9. Hic est liber hujus púeri. 10. Manébimus multos dies in hac civitáte. 11. Libri horum puerórum sunt magni. 12. Propter hoc eum non vidi. 13. Magíster eum laudávit his verbis. 14. Innocens ego sum a sánguine justi hujus. 15. Hae puéllae sunt bonae. 16. Libros his púeris dabo. 17. In his tempóribus haec non póssumus dícere. 18. Non est hic*: surréxit sicut dixit. 19. Hunc púerum non culpo. 20. Laudabo has puéllas.

* Remember that **hic** can also mean *here.*

SECTION XXXIX.

The Demonstrative ILLE.

	ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD: that.					
	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nominative ..	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
Accusative ..	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
Genitive ..	illíus	illíus	illíus	illórum	illárum	illórum
Dative ..	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Ablative ..	illo	illa	illo	illis	illis	illis

N.B.—**Ille**, like **hic**, is used both **substantivally** and **adjectivally**—*e.g.*, **ille**=*that man*; **ille puer**=*that boy*; **illa**=*those things*, or *that*; **illa opera**=*those works*. **Ille** often means simply *he*, etc.

EXERCISE LXX.

1. Beátus est ille servus qui Dóminum amat. 2. In illo témpore dixit Jesus discípulis suis, Data est mihi omnis potéstas in coelo et in terrâ. 3. Ille qui mandúcat meam carnem, et bibit meum sánguinem, in me manet, et ego in illo. 4. In diébus illis descéndit Ángelus Dei de coelo. 5. Quis erat ille puer qui illud dixit? 6. Illos libros his púeris dábimus. 7. Servus illíus est bonus, sed servus meus est malus. 8. Cur illud dixísti? 9. Núntius venit ad regínam et dicit illi, Exércitus victus est. 10. Illum amámus, et illi multa dona damus. 11. Illam puéllam laudámus, sed hunc púerum culpámus. 12. Hi servi sunt boni, illi mali. 13. Jesus venit ad discípulos suos et manducávit cum illis. 14. Rex púerum vidit et vocávit eum. 15. Dóminum amo: in illo est auxílium meum. 16. Illud opus non póssumus suscípere. 17. Cujus liber est ille? 18. Sacérdos ad altáre venit et ante illud stat et orat. 19. Quis est pater illórum puerórum? 20. Da illos libros illi puéllae.

SECTION XL.

Present Participles.

Present participles of all four Conjugations are formed by removing the **-bam** of the **Imperfect** tense and adding **-ns**—*e.g.* :

amábam, amans, *loving* ; **audiébam, aúdiens,** *hearing*, etc.

The present participle is declined like **potens** ; but the abl. sing. often ends in **-e** as well as in **-i.**

N.B.—The verb *to be* has no present participle.

EXERCISE LXXI.

VOCABULARY.

procídere, to fall down.	**antecédere,** to go before.
óriens, the east, orient.	**intráre,** to enter.
Judaéi, the Jews.	**invenire,** to find.
ubi, where.	**magus (2),** a wise man.
natus, born.	**turbáre,** to trouble.

1. Ecce magi ab oriénte venérunt dicéntes, Ubi est qui natus est rex Judaeórum ? 2. Vídimus stellam ejus in oriénte, et vénimus adoráre eum. 3. Aúdiens haec, Heródes rex turbátus est. 4. Mittens illos in Béthlehem, dixit, Inveníte púerum. 5. Ecce stella antecedébat eos. 6. Vidéntes stellam magi gaudébant. 7. Intrántes domum invenérunt púerum cum Maríâ, matre ejus, et procidéntes adoravérunt eum. 8. Docéte omnes gentes, baptizántes hómines in nómine Patris, et Fílii, et Spíritus Sancti. 9. Omnis qui credit quóniam Jesus est Christus a Deo natus est. 10. In diébus illis ecce ego vidi ángelum ascendéntem ab oriénte, habéntem signum Dei vivi. 11. Ángeli procidéntes in conspéctu throni Dei in fácies suas, adoravérunt Dóminum. 12. Apériens os suum docébat pópulum. 13. Omnes clamábant, dícentes, Hosánna fílio David.* 14. Videns illum, in fáciem suam prócidit. 15. Ego vox clamántis in desérto. 16. Vidébitis Fílium hóminis veniéntem cum potestáte magnâ. 17. Jesus vidit Maríam, matrem suam, stantem juxta crucem. 18. Homo véniens adorábat illum.

SECTION XLI.

Future Participles.

The **Future Participle** of any verb is regularly formed by inserting **-ur** before the termination **-us** of the **past participle**—*e.g.*:

amátus, amatúrus; audítus, auditúrus.

---

* Many proper nouns which are taken straight from the Hebrew are not declined in Latin; hence **fílio David** means *to the son of David.*

The Future Participle is an **active** participle, and is usually to be translated by **about to love, going to love,** etc.—*e.g.:*

Puer audítúrus erat verba patris.
The boy was **about to listen to** *the words of his father.*

EXERCISE LXXII.

VOCABULARY.

revólvere, to roll back.
accédere, to approach.
íterum, again.
stupefáctus, amazed.
fúgere, to flee.
excélsus, most high.
tres, tria (*neuter*).
exspectáre, to look for, wait for.
super (*with Acc. and Abl.*), upon, over, above.
lapis, lápidis (*m.*), a stone.
autem (*placed after first word in phrase*), but, however.
unus, one.
prae (*with Abl.*), before, for.
testimónium, testimony, witness.

1. Et íterum ventúrus est cum glóriâ judicáre vivos et mórtuos. 2. Viri stabant stupefácti, audiéntes vocem, néminem autem vidéntes. 3. Omnes gentes vénient dicéntes, Glória tibi, Dómine. 4. Et exspécto resurrectiónem mortuórum et vitam ventúri saéculi. 5. Tres sunt qui testimónium dant in coelo: Pater, Verbum, et Spíritus Sanctus: et hi tres unum sunt. 6. Et tres sunt qui testimónium dant in terrâ: Spíritus, et aqua et sanguis: et hi tres unum sunt. 7. Discípuli venérunt ad Jesum, dicéntes, Tu es qui ventúrus es? 8. Quis osténdit vobis fúgere a ventúrâ irâ? 9. Benedícta es tu, Virgo María, a Dómino Deo excélso, prae ómnibus muliéribus super terram. 10. Íterum vidébo vos, et gaudébit cor vestrum. 11. Ángelus Dómini descéndit de coelo, et accédens revólvit lápidem, et sedébat super eum.

SECTION XLII.

Third Conjugation Verbs in -io.

Some 3rd Conjugation verbs form their present indicative (1st person singular) in **-io,** and keep the **i** throughout the present, future, and imperfect tenses—*e.g.:*

cápere, to take.

Pres. Indic.: **cápio, capis, capit, cápimus, cápitis, cápiunt.**
Future: **cápiam, cápies, cápiet,** etc.
Imperfect: **capiébam, capiébas,** etc.
Perfect: **cepi, cepisti, cepit,** etc.
Fut. Perf.: **cepero,** etc.
Pluperf.: **ceperam,** etc.
Pres. Pass.: **capior, caperis, capitur,** etc.

Some verbs like **cápere**:

erípio* (*perf.* **erípui**), to snatch away, deliver.
fácio (*perf.* **feci**), to do, make.
accípio (*perf.* **accépi**), to receive, take.
fúgio (*perf.* **fugi**), to flee.
respício (*perf.* **respéxi**), to look, regard.
despício (*perf.* **despéxi**), to despise, look down on.
aspício (*perf.* **aspéxi**), to look, see.
suscípio, (*perf.* **suscépi**), to receive, undertake.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

VOCABULARY.

sacrífico (1), to sacrifice.
hóstia, a victim, host.
injúria, injury.
condo (3), to lay up.
mundus (2), the world.
scio (4), to know.
ígitur, therefore.
calix, cálicis (*m.*), cup, chalice.
revolútus, rolled back.
monuméntum, grave, sepulchre.
salutáre, salutáris (*n.*), salvation.
divítiae, riches.
respóndeo (2), to answer.
finis, finis (*m.*), end, border.

1. Adjutórium nostrum in nómine Dómini, qui fecit coelum et terram. 2. Clamábit ad me, et ego exaúdiam eum; erípiam eum et glorificábo eum. 3. Cálicem salutáris accípiam, et sacrificábo hóstiam laudis. 4. Osténde nobis, Dómine, misericórdiam tuam, et salutáre tuum da nobis. 5. Et ille respóndens dixit, Amíce, non fácio tibi injúriam. 6. Accípite et manducáte ex hoc omnes. 7. Et Verbum caro factum est. 8. Quis revólvet lápidem ab óstio monuménti? 9. Et respiciéntes vidérunt lápidem revolútum. 10. Hic vir, despíciens mundum, condit divítias in coelo. 11. Nunc scio quia misit Dóminus Ángelum suum, et erípuit me de manu Heródis. 12. Déxtera Dómini fecit virtútem, déxtera Dómini exaltávit me. 13. Et venit Jesus, et áccipit panem, et dat eis. 14. Imponébant manus super illos, et accipiébant Spíritum Sanctum. 15. Viri Galilaéi, cur statis aspiciéntes in coelum? 16. Vidérunt omnes fines terrae salutáre Dei nostri. 17. Íterum relínquo mundum et vado ad Patrem. 18. Veníte, gentes, et adoráte Dóminum: quia hódie descéndit lux magna super terram. 19. Vidérunt óculi mei salutáre tuum. 20. Christus est Hóstia divína.

* The 1st pers. sing. pres. indic. will henceforth be given in the vocabularies instead of the infin., with a figure in brackets to show the conjugation.

SECTION XLIII.

Prohibitions.

Prohibitions are expressed in Latin by **noli** (plural **nolíte**) with the Infinitive. **Noli** is the imperative of the verb **nolo,** *to be unwilling*, and the prohibition really means: *be unwilling to do this:* **noli hoc fácere**—*i.e., do not do this.*

EXERCISE LXXIV.

VOCABULARY.

fac, *imperative of* **fácio.**
dic, *imperative of* **dico.**
duc, *imperative of* **duco.**
incrédulus, faithless.
enim, for.
salvus, safe, whole.
tango (3) (*perf.* **tétigi**), to touch.
oblátio, oblatiónis (*f.*), oblation.
nondum, not yet.
vexo (1), to trouble, vex.
condémno (1), to condemn.
occído (3), to kill.

1. Dixit eis, Súrgite, et nolíte timére. 2. Levántes autem óculos suos néminem vidérunt nisi solum Jesum. 3. Dixit ei Jesus, Noli me tángere, nondum enim ascéndi ad Patrem meum. 4. Vade autem ad fratres meos, et dic eis, Ascéndo ad Patrem meum et Patrem vestrum. 5. Venit ígitur María Magdaléne annúntians discípulis, Vidi Dóminum, et haec dixit mihi. 6. Pax vobis: ego sum, nolíte timére. 7. Haec fac pro me. 8. Noli vexáre illum. 9. Hanc ígitur oblatiónem áccipe, Dómine. 10. Nolíte judicáre, et non judicabímini; nolíte condemnáre, et non condemnabímini. 11. Noli esse incrédulus, sed fidélis. 12. Deus tibi osténdet divítias glóriae suae. 13. Dico servo meo, Fac hoc, et facit. 14. Exaltábo te, Dómine, quóniam suscepísti me. 15. Nolíte timére eos qui occídunt corpus, ánimam autem non possunt occídere. 16. Dómine, éripe ánimam meam; salvum me fac propter misericórdiam tuam. 17. Fides tua, fília, salvam te fecit. 18. Jesus dixit illi, Noli fiere. 19. Ecce óculi Dómini super timéntes eum, sperántes in misericórdiâ ejus. 20. Jesus salvum fáciet pópulum suum a peccátis eórum.

SECTION XLIV.

Deponent Verbs.

There are many verbs in Latin which have a passive form, but an active meaning. These are called **deponent verbs.** With the exception of the present and future participles, they have no

active forms at all. They can never be used with a passive meaning. Thus the verb **sequor** means *I follow* and it is impossible to say "I am being followed" in Latin; the phrase has to be turned round into an active form: "someone is following me." These deponent verbs are found in all four conjugations, both regular and irregular. The following are some of the most common deponents:

precor (1), *perf.* **precátus sum,** I pray.
laetor (1), *perf.* **laetátus sum,** I rejoice.
confíteor (2), *perf.* **conféssus sum,** I confess, I give praise.
miséreor (2), *perf.* **misértus sum,** I have pity on, I have mercy on.
sequor (3), *perf.* **secútus sum,** I follow.
loquor (3), *perf.* **locútus sum,** I speak.
mórior (3), *perf.* **mórtuus sum,** I die.
nascor (3), *perf.* **natus sum,** I am born.
pátior (3), *perf.* **passus sum,** I suffer.

EXERCISE LXXV.

VOCABULARY.

lingua, a tongue.
proptérea, therefore.
ergo, therefore.
psalmus, a psalm.
parábola, a parable.
exsúlto (1), to exult, rejoice.
turba, a crowd.
nátio, natiónis (*f.*), a nation.
vários, various, divers.
plebs, plebis (*f.*), people.

1. Confitébor tibi, Deus meus. 2. Discípuli Jesum sequebántur. 3. Hómines iníqui moriéntur. 4. Haec locútus sum. 5. Laetántur coeli et exsúltat terra ante fáciem Dómini, quia venit. 6. Puer natus est nobis, et fílius datus est nobis. 7. Pre cor beátam Maríam, semper Vírginem, oráre pro me ad Dóminum Deum nostrum. 8. Turba magna sequebátur Jesum in civitátem. 9. Omnis qui vivit, et credit in me, non moriétur in aetérnum. 10. Et accédens Jesus locútus est eis, dicens, Data est mihi omnis potéstas in coelo et in terrâ. 11. Christus passus est pro nobis. 12. Loquebántur Apóstoli linguis variis. 13. Sub Póntio Piláto passus et sepúltus est. 14. Loquébar de testimóniis tuis in conspéctu regum. 15. Ecce, nos relíquimus ómnia et secúti sumus te: quid ergo erit nobis? 16. Proptérea confitébor in natiónibus, Dómine, et nómini tuo psalmum dicam. 17. In virtúte tuâ, Dómine, laetábitur justus, et super salutáre tuum exsultábit. 18. Laetábitur justus in Dómino, et sperábit in eo. 19. Confíteor Deo omnipoténti quia peccávi, meâ culpâ, meâ culpâ, meâ máximâ culpâ. 20. Haec ómnia locútus est Jesus in parábolis ad turbas.

Semi-Deponent Verbs.

A very few verbs are semi-deponent—*i.e.*, have a passive form in the perfect tenses:

aúdeo, *to dare*, has perfect **ausus sum.**
gaúdeo, *to rejoice*, has perfect **gavísus sum.**
fído, *to trust*, has perfect **físus sum.**

SECTION XLV.

The Present Infinitive and Imperative Passive.

The Present Infinitive Passive of verbs of the 1st, 2nd, and 4th Conjugations is formed by changing the **-e** at the end of the present Infinitive Active into **i**—*e.g.:*

Active: **amáre**; Passive: **amári**; so: **monére, monéri**; **audíre, audíri.** Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation drop out the **-er-**, but end in **i**, like the rest. Active: **régere**; Passive: **regi.**

The Present Infinitive, therefore, of all Deponent Verbs is formed in this way—*e.g.:*

precári, *to pray*; **confitéri**, *to confess*; **sequi**, *to follow*; **mori**, *to die*; **pati**, *to suffer*, etc.

The 2nd Person Singular of the Present Imperative Passive is formed in exactly the same way as the Present Infinitive Active —*e.g.:*

amáre means (1) *to love*, or (2) *be thou loved.*
régere means (1) *to rule*, or (2) *be thou ruled.*

Hence **séquere** means *follow;* **lóquere** means *speak*, etc.

The 2nd Person Plural Imperative Passive is formed in exactly the same way as the Present Indicative Passive: **amámini** means (1) *ye are loved*, or (2) *be ye loved.* Hence **sequímini** means (1) *ye follow*, or (2) *follow ye.*

EXERCISE LXXVI.

VOCABULARY.

exténdo (3), to stretch out.
incípio (3), to begin.
modo, now.
lex, legis (*f.*), law.
intérrogo (1), to ask.
volo, I will (*perf.* **vólui**).
vis, thou wilt, *or* thou wishest.
leprósus (2), a leper.
póstea, afterwards.
secúndum (*with Acc.*), according to, after.

1. Dixit Jesus Petro: Séquere me. 2. Regína coeli, laetáre, 3. Bonum est confitéri Dómino. 4. Judaéi dixérunt, Nos legem

habémus, et secúndum legem debet mori. 5. Fílius ejus incipiébat mori. 6. Ecce, leprósus véniens adorábat Jesum, dicens, Dómine, si vis, potes me mundáre. 7. Et exténdens manum Jesus tétigit eum, dicens, Volo, mundáre. 8. Dicit ei Petrus, Dómine, quo vadis? Respóndit Jesus, Quo ego vado, non potes me sequi modo, sequéris autem póstea. 9. Dicit ei Petrus, Quare non possum te sequi modo? ánimam meam pro te ponam. 10. Nunc vado ad eum qui misit me; et nemo intérrogat me, Quo vadis?

SECTION XLVI.

The Relative Pronoun.

	QUI, QUAE, QUOD: who.					
	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nominative ..	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Accusative ..	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
Genitive ..	cujus	cujus	cujus	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dative ..	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ablative ..	quo	quâ	quo	quibus	quibus	quibus

N.B.—The Relative agrees with its antecedent in number, person, and gender, but not in case; it takes its own case from its own phrase—*e.g.*:

Puer quem vidi adest: *the boy whom I saw is here.*

Puer adest, cujus matrem vidi: *the boy is here whose mother I saw.*

Hic est servus a quo rex occísus est: *this is the slave by whom the king was killed.*

EXERCISE LXXVII.

VOCABULARY.

óffero (3), to offer.
sómnium, a dream.
judícium, judgment.
nix, nivis (*f.*), snow.
sol, solis (*m.*), sun.
nubes, nubis (*f.*), a cloud.
appáreo (2), to appear.
seórsum, apart.
compláceo (2), to please.
procédo (3), to proceed, come forth.
peto (3), to ask, seek.
quaero (3), to seek, inquire.
sermo, sermónis (*m.*), word, speech.
ob (*with Acc.*), on account of, through.
vestiméntum, raiment, clothing.
assúmo (*perf.* **assúmpsi**) (3), to take up.
obúmbro (1), to overshadow.
egi (*perf. of* **ago**), I have done.

1. Audíte sómnium meum quod vidi. 2. Súscipe, sancta Trínitas, hanc oblatiónem quam tibi offérimus ob memóriam passiónis, resurrectiónis et ascensiónis Dómini nostri. 3. Spíritus Sanctus, quem mittet Pater in nómine meo, ille vos docébit ómnia. 4. Exaúdi, Dómine, vocem meam, quâ clamávi ad te. 5. Pétite, et accipiétis; quaérite, et inveniétis; pulsáte, et aperiétur vobis. 6. Omnis enim qui petit áccipit, et qui quaerit ínvenit, et pulsánti aperiétur. 7. Qui non díligit me, sermónes meos non servat. 8. Et sermó quem audístis, non est meus, sed ejus qui misit me. 9. Venit hora in quâ omnes qui in monuméntis sunt aúdient vocem Fílii Dei. 10. Et procédent, qui bona fecérunt, in resurrectiónem vitae: qui autem mala egérunt, in resurrectiónem judícii.

11. In illo témpore, assúmpsit Jesus Petrum et Jacóbum et Johánnem, fratrem ejus, et duxit illos in montem excélsum seórsum: et transfigurátus est ante eos. Et respléndui fácies ejus sicut sol: vestiménta autem ejus facta sunt alba sicut nix. Et ecce apparuérunt illis Moÿses et Elías cum eo loquéntes. Respóndens autem Petrus, dixit ad Jesum, Dómine, bonum est nobis hic esse. Si vis, faciémus tria tabernácula, tibi unum, Moÿsi unum, et Elíae unum. Et ecce nubes lúcida obumbrávit eos, et ecce, vox de nube dicens, Hic est Fílius meus diléctus, in quo mihi bene complácui: audíte eum. Et audiéntes, discípuli procidérunt in fácies suas, et timuérunt. Et accédens, Jesus tétigit eos, dicens, Súrgite, et nolíte timére. Levántes autem óculos suos néminem vidérunt, nisi solum Jesum. Et descendérunt illi de monte.—*St Matthew* xvii, 1.

SECTION XLVII.

The Verb IRE: to go.

Present.	*Future.*	*Imperfect.*	*Perfect.*
eo	ibo	ibam	ívi *or* ii
is	ibis	ibas	ívisti iísti
it	ibit	ibat	ívit iit
ímus	íbimus	ibámus	ívimus iímus
ítis	íbitis	ibátis	ívistis iístis
eunt	ibunt	ibant	ivérunt iérunt

N.B.—The Present Participle of **ire** is **iens** in the Nominative, but declines: **eúntem, eúntis**, etc.

Compounds of Ire.

exeo, to go out, go forth.
ábeo, to go away, depart.
íneo, to go in, enter.
introéo, to enter.
tránseo, to go across, to pass.
rédeo, to go back, return.
péreo, to perish.
circúeo, to go round.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

VOCABULARY.

coena, supper.
sonus, a sound.
locus, a place.
ibi, there.
úndecim, eleven.
dúbito (1), to doubt.
quidam, certain, some.
renuntio (1), announce.
praédico (1), to preach, extol.
navis, navis (*f.*), a ship.
fretum, water, sea.
áridus, dry, withered.
usque, right on, even, continually.
constítuo (3), to appoint, set.
consummátio, consummatiónis (*f.*), consummation, end.

1. In illo témpore ibat Jesus in civitátem quae vocátur Naim, et ibant cum eo discípuli ejus, et turba magna. 2. Et vox de throno exívit, dicens, Laudáte Deum nostrum. 3. Quid exiístis in desértum vidére? 4. María ábiit in civitátem et íniit in domum Zacharíae. 5. Et íterum éxiens de fínibus Tyri, venit ad mare Galilaéae. 6. Et dimísit eos et ábiit in montem oráre. 7. Ascendéntes in navem, abiérunt in desértum locum seórsum. 8. Et introívit íterum in synagógam, et erat ibi homo habens manum áridam. 9. Eúntes in mundum univérsum, praedicáte ómnibus géntibus. 10. In omnem terram exívit sonus eórum, et in fines terrae verba eórum. 11. Exiérunt Jesus et discípuli ejus in montem Olivárum. 12. Et exiit hic sermo in univérsam terram illam. 13. Et dimíttens eos, ascéndit íterum in navem, et ábiit trans fretum. 14. Ibo in civitátem, et ibi coenam parábo. 15. Si abíero, et parávero vobis locum, íterum vénio et accípiam vos ad me. 16. Eúntes renuntiáte Johánni quae audivístis et vidístis. 17. Dómine, salva nos, perímus. 18. Et circuíbat Jesus totam Galilaéam, docens in synagógis. 19. Et ábiit Ananías, et introívit in domum, et impónens manus super eum, dixit, Saule, frater, Dóminus misit me. 20. Introíbo ad altáre Dei, ad Deum qui laetíficat juventútem meam.

In illo témpore, úndecim discípuli abiérunt in Galilaéam, in montem, ubi constítuerat illis Jesus. Et vidéntes eum, adoravérunt: quidam autem dubitavérunt. Et accédens, Jesus locútus est eis, dicens, Data est mihi omnis potéstas in coelo, et in terrâ. Eúntes ergo, docéte omnes gentes, baptizántes eos in nómine

Patris, et Fílii, et Spíritus Sancti: docéntes eos serváre ómnia quae mandávi vobis. Et ecce, ego vobíscum sum ómnibus diébus, usque ad consummatiónem saéculi.—*St Matthew* xxviii, 16.

SECTION XLVIII.

The Present Subjunctive.

amáre.	monére.	régere.	audíre.	esse.
amem	móneam	regam	aúdiam	sim
ames	móneas	regas	aúdias	sis
amet	móneat	regat	aúdiat	sit
amémus	moneámus	regámus	audiámus	simus
amétis	moneátis	regátis	audiátis	sitis
ament	móneant	regant	aúdiant	sint

Passive: amer, améris, amétur, amémur, amémini, améntur, etc.

The Present Subjunctive may express the idea *let me love*, or *may I love* —*e.g.*, **orémus**, *let us pray ;* **fiat volúntas tua**, (*may*) *Thy will be done.*

EXERCISE LXXIX.

Vocabulary.

matutínus (*adj.*), morning.
inténdens, attentive.
custódia, watch.
lábium, lip.
fio†(3), to be done, be made, become, be.
deprecátio (*f.*), prayer, entreaty.
novi (*perf. of* **nosco**), I know.*
volúntas, voluntátis (*f.*), will.

1. Ecce áncilla Dómini: fiat mihi secúndum verbum tuum. 2. Fiant aures tuae intendéntes in vocem deprecatiónis meae. 3. A custódiâ matutínâ usque ad noctem speret Ísraël in Dómino. 4. Fidélium ánimae per misericórdiam Dei requiéscant in pace. 5. Suscípiat Dóminus sacrifícium de mánibus tuis ad laudem et glóriam nóminis sui. 6. Dóminus sit in corde tuo et in lábiis tuis. 7. Haec est dies quam fecit Dóminus: exsultémus et laetémur in eâ. 8. Adorémus in aetérnum sanctíssimum Sacraméntum. 9. Corpus Dómini nostri Jesus Christi custódiat ánimam tuam in vitam aetérnam. 10. Sperent in te omnes qui novérunt nomen tuum. 11. Pater noster, qui es in coelis, sanctificétur nomen tuum, advéniat regnum tuum, fiat volúntas tua, sicut in coelo et in terrâ. 12. Tenuísti manum déxteram meam, et in voluntáte tuâ duxísti me, et cum glóriâ suscepísti me.

* **nosco** means *I get to know ;* therefore the perfect **novi** means *I have got to know*—i.e., *I know.* † The infinitive of **fio** is **fieri.**

SECTION XLIX.

The Pronoun IPSE.

The Pronoun **ipse** declines exactly like **ille**, except that the Neuter singular (Nominative and Accusative) usually ends in **-m** instead of **-d: ipsum.** It is used:

1. As an emphatic pronoun, meaning *self:* hence **ego ipse** means *I myself;* **múlier ipsa,** *the woman herself;* **púeri ipsi,** *the boys themselves,* and so on.

2. As a personal pronoun, meaning *he, she, it—e.g.,* **ipsum vidi,** *I saw him.*

EXERCISE LXXX.

VOCABULARY.

possídeo (2), to possess.
si quis, if anyone.
ábnego (1), to deny.
tunc, then.
indignus, unworthy.
negligéntia, a failing.
dignē, worthily.
competénter, fitly.
Evangélium, gospel.
pes, pedis (*m.*), foot.
circúmsto (1), to stand round.
nec, and not.
semetípsum, himself.
perdo (3) (*perf.* **pérdidi**), to lose, destroy.
mitis (*3rd Decl. adj.*), gentle, meek.
immaculátus, spotless, immaculate.
offénsio, offensiónis (*f.*), transgression.
circumstántes, those present.*
defúnctus, dead, departed.
proficio (3), to help, assist, profit.
apud (*with Acc.*), with, at.
ut (*followed by Subj.*), that, in order that.
univérsus, all.
innumerábilis (*3rd Decl. adj.*), countless.

1. Ecce fáciam illos ut véniant et adórent ante pedes tuos. 2. Oráte, fratres, ut meum et vestrum sacrifícium acceptábile fiat apud Deum Patrem omnipoténtem. 3. Dóminus sit in corde tuo et in lábiis tuis, ut dignē et competénter annúnties Evangélium suum, in nómine Patris, et Fílii, et Spíritus Sancti. 4. Tunc Jesus dixit, Pater, grátias ago tibi quóniam audísti me, ego autem sciébam quia semper me audis; sed propter pópulum qui circúmstat dixi, ut credant quia tu me misísti. 5. Súscipe, Sancte Pater, omnipótens aetérne Deus, hanc immaculátam hóstiam quam ego, indígnus fámulus tuus, óffero tibi Deo meo vivo et vero, pro innumerabílibus peccátis, et offensiónibus et negligéntiis meis, et pro ómnibus circumstántibus, sed et pro ómnibus fidélibus Christiánis vivis atque defúnctis: ut mihi et illis proficiat ad salútem in vitam aetérnam. 6. Nunc dimíttis servum tuum, Dómine, secúndum verbum tuum in pace. 7. Quia vidérunt óculi mei salutáre tuum. 8. Quod parásti† ante fáciem

* Literally, *those standing round*—present participle of **circumsto.**

† Contracted perfect of **paráre.**

ómnium populórum. 9. Lumen ad revelatiónem géntium et glóriam plebis tuae Israël. 10. Beáti paúperes spíritu: quóniam ipsórum est regnum coelórum. 11. Beáti mites: quóniam ipsi possidébunt terram. 12. Véritas mea et misericórdia mea cum ipso; et in nómine meo exaltábitur cornu ejus. 13. Tunc Jesus dixit discípulis suis, Si quis vult post me veníre, ábneget semetípsum, et tollat crucem suam et sequátur me. 14. Qui enim volúerit* ánimam suam salvam fácere, perdet eam; qui autem perdíderit ánimam suam propter me, invéniet eam. 15. Non turbétur cor vestrum: créditis in Deum, et in me crédite. 16. Non créditis quia ego in Patre, et Pater in me est? 17. Verba quae ego loquor vobis, a me ipso non loquor, Pater autem in me manens, ipse facit ópera. 18. Gaudeámus et exsultémus, et demus glóriam Deo. 19. Sit nomen Dómini benedíctum ex hoc nunc, et usque in saéculum. 20. Pater vobis dabit Spíritum veritátis, quem mundus non potest accípere, quia non videt eum nec scit eum; vos autem cognoscétis eum, quia apud vos manébit, et in vobis erit.

SECTION L.

The Imperfect Subjunctive.

The **Imperfect Subjunctive** of any verb is formed by adding the endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt,** on to the Present Infinitive Active—*e.g.*, Infinitive, **amare**; Imperfect Subjunctive, **amárem, amáres, amáret, amarémus, amarétis, amárent.** So **audírem, audíres,** etc. The Passive is formed in the same way, by adding the endings **-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -mini, -ntur**—*e.g.*, **amárer, amaréris,** etc. The Imperfect Subjunctive of **esse** is **essem,** etc.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

VOCABULARY.

comprehéndo (3), to comprehend.
sine (*with Abl.*), without.
nihil, nothing.
recípio (3), to receive.
quotquot, as many as.
neque, nor, and not (*same as* **nec**).
ténebrae (*plural*), darkness.
perhíbeo (2), bear, render.
próprius, his own, belonging to.
lúceo (2), to shine.
fieri (*infin. of* **fio**), to be made, become.
ex (*with Abl.*), from, of, out of.

In princípio erat Verbum, et Verbum erat apud Deum, et Deus erat Verbum. Hoc erat in princípio apud Deum. Ómnia per ipsum facta sunt, et sine ipso factum est nihil quod factum est. In ipso vita erat, et vita erat lux hóminum; et lux in ténebris lucet, et ténebrae eam non comprehendérunt. Fuit homo

* Future-perfect of **volo,** *I wish.*

missus a Deo, cui nomen erat Johánnes. Hic venit in testimónium, ut testimónium perhibéret de lúmine, ut omnes créderent per illum. Non erat ille lux; sed ut testimónium perhibéret de lúmine. Erat lux vera, quae illúminat omnem hóminem veniéntem in hunc mundum. In mundo erat, et mundus per ipsum factus est, et mundus eum non cognóvit. In própria venit, et sui eum non recepérunt. Quotquot autem recepérunt eum, dedit eis potestátem fílios Dei fieri; his qui credunt in nómine ejus, qui non ex sanguínibus, neque ex voluntáte carnis, neque ex voluntáte viri, sed ex Deo nati sunt. Et Verbum caro factum est, et habitávit in nobis; et vídimus glóriam ejus, glóriam quasi Unigéniti a Patre, plenum grátiae et veritátis.*—*St John* i, 1.

EXERCISE LXXXII.

Vocabulary.

tento (1), to tempt.
diábolus, the devil.
jejúno (1), to fast.
quadragínta, forty.
státuo (3), to set, place.
deórsum, down.
ait, he says.
rursum, again.
ne (*with Subj.*), lest.
esúrio (4), to be hungry.
forte, haply, by chance.
tentátor, tempter.
iste (*like* **ille**), that *or* this.
valdē, very, exceedingly.
cado (3), to fall, fall down.
sérvio (4) (*with Dative*), to serve.
minístro (1), to minister.
soli (*Dative of* **solus**), alone, only.

In illo témpore ductus est Jesus in desértum a Spíritu, ut tentarétur a diábolo. Et jejunábat quadragínta diébus et quadragínta nóctibus, et póstea esúriit. Et accédens tentátor dixit ei, Si Fílius Dei es, dic ut lápides isti panes fiant. Qui respóndens dixit, Scriptum est: Non in solo pane vivit homo, sed in omni verbo quod procédit de ore Dei. Tunc assúmpsit eum diabolus in sanctam civitátem, et státuit eum super pinnáculum templi, et dixit ei, Si Fílius Dei es, mitte te deórsum. Scriptum est enim: Quia Ángelis suis mandávit de te, et in mánibus tollent te, ne forte offéndas ad lápidem pedem tuum. Ait illi Jesus, Rursum scriptum est: Non tentábis Dóminum Deum tuum. Íterum assúmpsit eum diábolus in montem excélsum valdē: et osténdit ei ómnia regna mundi, et glóriam eórum, et dixit ei, Haec ómnia tibi dabo, si cadens adoráveris me. Tunc dicit ei Jesus, Vade Sátana: scriptum est enim: Dóminum Deum tuum adorábis, et illi soli sérvies. Tunc relíquit eum diábolus: et ecce ángeli accessérunt, et ministrábant ei.—*St Matthew* iv, 1.

* **plenus** is sometimes followed by the Genitive case as well as by the Ablative; *cf.* English *full of* and *filled with*.

SECTION LI.

The Ablative Absolute.

The **Ablative Absolute** is a phrase consisting of a noun and a participle in the Ablative case, representing a subordinate clause in English. The translation of the phrase varies with the context, being temporal, causal, concessive, etc., as the occasion requires —*e.g.:*

nobis audiéntibus, rex haec dixit, *the king said this in our hearing,* or *while we were listening;* **rege mórtuo, pópulus lugébat,** *the people mourned because the king was dead.*

The Ablative Absolute is used very frequently in Latin owing to the want of a past participle active (except in deponent verbs). It is impossible, for example, to say in Latin, "having done this, he went away," because there is no word that means "having done." The phrase must, therefore, be turned passively, "this having been done," with both words in the Ablative: **hoc facto, ábiit.** The translation, however, should take the active form: *having done this, he went away.*

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

VOCABULARY.

quinque, five.
ligo (1), to bind.
piscis, piscis (*m.*), fish.
in médio, in the midst.
claudo (3), to shut.
clausus (*past part.*), shut.
somnus, sleep.
somni (*pl.*), dreams.
apértus, opened.
duóbus (*Dat. or Abl. of* **duo**), two.
frango (3) (*perf.* **fregi**), to break.
infúndo (3), to pour in, infuse.
quaésumus, we beseech thee.
intúeor (2), to behold, see, gaze at.
recúmbo (3), to recline (at table).
mens, mentis (*f.*), mind, soul.
sto (*perf.* **steti**) (1), to stand.
divído (*perf.* **divísi**) (3), to divide.

1. Relíctis illis, in desértum ábiit. 2. Venit Jesus, jánuis clausis, et stetit in médio, et dixit, Pax vobis. 3. Sedénte Jesu super montem Olivéti, accessérunt ad eum discípuli. 4. Et ille, elevátis óculis in discípulos suos, dicébat, Beáti paúperes, quia vestrum est regnum Dei. 5. Defúncto Heróde, ecce Ángelus Dómini appáruit in somnis Joseph in Aegýpto. 6. Et accéptis quinque pánibus et duóbus píscibus, íntuens in coelum, benedíxit, et fregit panes, et dedit discípulis suis, ut pónerent ante eos; et duos pisces divísit ómnibus. 7. Grátiam tuam quaésumus, Dómine, méntibus nostris infúnde, ut qui, ángelo nuntiánte, Christi

Fílii tui Incarnatiónem cognóvimus, per Passiónem Ejus et crucem ad Resurrectiónis glóriam perducámur. 8. **Misereátur vestri*** **omnípotens Deus, et, dimíssis peccátis vestris, perdúcat vos ad vitam aetérnam.** 9. **In illo témpore, recumbéntibus úndecim discípulis, appáruit illis Jesus.** 10. **Et Jesu baptizáto, et oránte, apértum est coelum.**

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

VOCABULARY.

mane, in the morning, early.
ungo (3), to anoint.
jam, now, already.
ínvicem, one another.
stola, a robe.
cándidus, white.
quippe, for, in fact.
expavésco (3), to be affrighted.
una sabbatórum, the first day of the week.
emo (3) (*perf.* **emi**), to buy.
aróma, arómatis (*n.*), sweet spice.
órior (4) (*perf.* **ortus sum**), to rise.
júvenis, júvenis (*m.*), a young man.
coopértus, clothed.
obstupésco (3) (*perf.* **obstúpui**), to be amazed.
praecédo (3), to go before.

In illo témpore María Magdaléne, et María mater Jacóbi, et Salóme emérunt arómata, ut veniéntes úngerent Jesum. Et valdē mane unâ sabbatórum, véniunt ad monuméntum, orto jam sole. Et dicébant ad ínvicem, Quis revólvet nobis lápidem ab óstio monuménti? Et respiciéntes vidérunt revolútum lápidem. Erat quippe magnus valdē. Et introëúntes in monuméntum, vidérunt júvenem sedéntem in dextris, coopértum stolâ cándidâ, et obstupuérunt. Qui dicit illis, Nolíte expavéscere: Jesum quaéritis Názarénum, crucifíxum: surréxit, non est hic; ecce locus ubi posuérunt eum. Sed ite, dícite discípulis ejus et Petro, quia praecédit vos in Galilaéam: ibi eum vidébitis, sicut dixit vobis.—*St Mark* xvi, 1.

SECTION LII.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive Active is formed by adding **-ssem** to the 1st person singular of the Perfect Indicative Active—*e.g.*:

amávi, amavíssem; mónui, monuíssem; rexi, rexíssem, etc.

The tense is conjugated regularly—*e.g.*:

amavíssem, amavísses, amavísset, amavissémus, amavissétis, amavíssent.†

---

* **miséreor** governs the Genitive case, or sometimes the Dative.

† **-vi-** often drops out—*e.g.*, **amavíssem** contracts to **amássem**; **audivíssem** to **audíssem**; **transivíssem** to **transíssem**, etc.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive is formed from the past participle of the verb, and the Imperfect Subjunctive of **esse**—*e.g.:*

amátus essem, mónitus essem, etc.

N.B.—**cum,** meaning *when,* is usually followed by the pluperfect subjunctive in reference to past time—*e.g.:*

Cum haec dixísset, ábiit, *when he had said this, he went away.*

EXERCISE LXXXV.

VOCABULARY.

occúrro (3), to meet, go to meet (*with Dative*).
caecus, blind.
inde, thence, from there, then.
recédo (3), to withdraw, depart.
régio, regiónis (*f.*), region, land.
daemónium, an evil spirit.
centúrio, centuriónis (*m.*), a centurion.
appropínquo (1), to come nigh, approach.
et . . . et, both . . . and.

1. Cum descendísset Jesus de monte, secútae sunt eum turbae multae. 2. Cum autem Jesus introísset Caphárnaum, accéssit ad eum centúrio. 3. Cum Magi audíssent regem, abiérunt. 4. Et cum recessíssent, ecce Ángelus Dei appáruit. 5. Cum appropinquásset Jesus ad Jerúsalem, et venísset ad montem Olivéti, tunc misit duos discípulos ad civitátem. 6. Videns Jesus turbas, ascéndit in montem, et cum sedísset, accessérunt ad eum discípuli. 7. Cum inde transísset, venit in synagógam. 8. Cum venísset trans fretum in regiónem illam, occurrérunt ei duo habéntes daemónia. 9. Cum jejunásset quadragínta diébus et quadragínta nóctibus, póstea esúriit. 10. Cum autem venísset ad illum locum, accessérunt ad eum et caeci et infirmi.

SECTION LII (*Continued*).

N.B.—The Pluperfect Subjunctive is used to express an unfulfilled condition in past time—*e.g.:*

Si hoc fecísses, peccavísses, *if you had done this, you would have sinned* (implying, *but you did not do it*).

The Imperfect Subjunctive is used to express an unfulfilled condition in present time—*e.g.:*

Si tu adésses, haec tibi dícerem, *if you were here, I would tell you this* (implying, *but you are not here*).

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

VOCABULARY.

Pharisaéus, a pharisee.
néscio (4), to know not.
fur, furis (*m.*), a thief.
álius, other.
ullus, any.
adhuc, still.
odérunt, they hate.
scitóte, know ye.
perfódio (3), to break open.
crucifígo (3), to crucify.
útique, surely, certainly.
trado (3), to deliver up, betray.
advérsum (*with Acc.*), against.
pláceo (2), to please (*with Dative*).
sino (3), to allow, suffer.
qualis, what manner of.
paterfamílias, the good man of the house.
quâ horâ, at what hour.

1. Dómine, si fuísses hic, non esset mórtuus frater meus. 2. Si adhuc homínibus placérem, Christi servus non essem. 3. Pharisaéus autem dixit, Hic si esset prophéta, sciret útique quae et qualis est múlier quae tangit eum. 4. Audístis quia ego dixi vobis: vado, et venio ad vos. Si diligerétis me, gauderétis útique, quia vado ad Patrem. 5. Vigiláte, quia nescítis quâ horâ Dóminus vester vénturus sit. Illud autem scitóte, quóniam, si sciret paterfamílias, quâ horâ fur ventúrus esset, vigiláret útique, et non síneret pérfodi domum suam. 6. Judaéi dixérunt, Si non esset hic malefáctor, non tibi tradidissémus eum. 7. Si ópera non fecíssem in eis, quae nemo álius fecit, peccátum non habérent, nunc autem et vidérunt et odérunt et me et Patrem meum. 8. Dicit ergo Pilátus, Mihi non lóqueris ? Nescis quia potestátem habeo crucifígere te, et potestátem dimíttere te ? Respóndit Jesus, Non habéres potestátem advérsum me ullam, nisi tibi datum esset desuper.

SECTION LIII.

The Perfect Subjunctive.

The Perfect Subjunctive Active is formed by adding **-erim, -eris, -erit, -erimus, -eritis, -erint,** to the perfect stem of the verb—*e.g.:*

amáverim, monúerim, réxerim, audíverim, etc.

The Perfect Subjunctive Passive is formed from the past participle of the verb, and the present subjunctive of **esse**—*e.g.:*

amátus sim, mónitus sim, etc.

N.B.—The Subjunctive is often, though not always in Church Latin, used in an indirect question clause—*e.g.:*

I shall ask him what he has done = **eum rogábo quid fécerit.**
I asked him what he had done = **eum rogávi quid fecísset.**

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

VOCABULARY.

coepérunt, they began.
vello (3), to pluck.
sábbato, on the sabbath.
quando, when.
quómodo, how.
víolo (1), to break.
sata (*neut. pl.*), corn, cornfields.
spica, an ear of corn.
licet, it is lawful.
panes propositiónis, loaves of proposition.
cómedo *or* **edo** (3), to eat.
crimen, críminis (*n.*), blame, guilt.

In illo témpore ábiit Jesus per sata sábbato: discípuli autem ejus esuriéntes coepérunt véllere spicas, et manducáre. Pharisaéi autem vidéntes, dixérunt ei, Ecce discípuli tui fáciunt quod non licet fácere sábbatis. At ille dixit eis, Non legístis quid fécerit David, quando esúriit, et qui cum eo erant: Quómodo intrávit in domum Dei, et panes propositiónis comédit, quos non licébat ei édere, neque his, qui cum eo erant, nisi solis sacerdótibus? Aut non legístis in lege quia sábbatis sacerdótes in templo sábbatum víolant, et sine crímine sunt?—*St Matthew* xii, 1.

SECTION LIII (*Continued*).

N.B.—The Perfect Subjunctive is sometimes used, with **ne** or some other negative, to express a Prohibition—*e.g.*:

Ne timúeris, *be not afraid.*

The Present Subjunctive is also used in this way in Church Latin—*e.g.*:

Ne occídas, *do not kill.*

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

VOCABULARY.

confestim, forthwith.
súscito (1), to raise up.
ejício (3), to cast out.
pótius, rather.
infírmus, sick, infirm.
curo (1), to heal, care for.
praecípio (3), to enjoin, command.
pacífico (1), to make peaceful, grant peace to.
lepra, leprosy.
munus, múneris (*n.*), gift, present.
coadúno (1), to unite, grant union to.
dignor (1), to vouchsafe.

1. Cum autem descendísset de monte, secútae sunt eum turbae multae; et ecce leprósus véniens, adorábat eum, dicens, Dómine, si vis, potes me mundáre. Et exténdens Jesus manum, tétigit eum, dicens: Volo. Mundáre. Et confestim mundáta est lepra ejus. Et ait illi Jesus: Vide, némini díxeris: sed vade, osténde te sacerdóti, et offer munus, quod praecépit Moÿses, in

testimónium illis. 2. Apóstolos misit Jesus, praecípiens eis, dicens, In viam géntium ne abiéritis, et in civitátes Samaritanórum ne intravéritis, sed pótius ite ad oves quae periérunt domus Israël. 3. Dómine Jesu Christi, qui dixísti Apóstolis tuis, Pacem relínquo vobis, pacem meam do vobis: ne respícias peccáta mea, sed fidem Ecclésiae tuae: eámque* secúndum voluntátem tuam pacificáre et coadunáre dignéris: Qui vivis et regnas Deus per ómnia saécula saeculórum.

SECTION LIV.

The Infinitive Mood.

The Present Infinitives, Active and Passive, have already been given. The Perfect Infinitive Active is formed by adding **-sse** to the Perfect Indicative, 1st person singular—*e.g.:*

amávi, *I have loved ;* **amavísse,** *to have loved ;* so, **rexi, rexísse,** etc.

The Perfect Infinitive Passive is formed from the Past Participle of the verb, and **esse :**

amátus esse, *to have been loved ;* so, **rectus esse,** etc.

The Future Infinitive Active is formed from the Future Participle and **esse**—*e.g.:*

amatúrus esse, *to be about to love ;* so, **rectúrus esse,** etc.

The Future Infinitive Passive is formed from the Supine† and **iri**‡—*e.g.:*

amátum iri, *to be about to be loved ;* so, **rectum iri,** etc.

N.B.—The Perfect Passive and Future Active Infinitives are declinable, being composed of participles; the other four are indeclinable.

In Ecclesiastical Latin an Indirect Statement clause is usually expressed by some word such as **quóniam** or **quia,** which represents the English "that," and which is followed by the Indicative (or sometimes by the Subjunctive)—*e.g.:*

Confíteor quia peccávi, *I confess that I have sinned.*

---

* **que** meaning *and* is attached to the end of a word, but is translated as though it preceded it—*e.g.*, **viri mulierésque,** *men and women.*

† The Supine is a verbal noun (indeclinable) formed similarly to the past participle, but ending in **-um.** It is seldom used in Latin (see Section LX).

‡ **iri** is the present Infinitive passive of the verb **eo,** *to go,* used impersonally.

The alternative construction, which is the only one allowed in Classical Latin, is sometimes used—viz., no word is used for "that," the subject of the clause is put in the Accusative, and the verb in the Infinitive—*e.g.*:

"*They say that he is walking in the fields*" (*they say him to be walking*, etc.), **dicunt eum in agris ambuláre.**

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

VOCABULARY.

phantásma, a phantasm, apparition.
unde, whence.
proptérea, therefore.
puto (1), to think.
supra (*with Acc.*), above, on.
extra (*with Acc.*), outside, beyond.
óbviam vénio (*with Dat.*), to come to meet.
cito, quickly.
traho (3) (*perf.* **traxi**), to draw, drag.
aéstimo (1), to think.
vísio, visiónis (*f.*), a vision.
prius, before.

1. Illi vidéntes eum ambulántem supra mare, putavérunt phantásma esse. 2. Bonum est nos hic esse. 3. Novi virtútem de me exíisse. 4. Et respondébant se nescíre unde esset. 5. Proptérea óbviam venit ei turba, quia audiérunt eum fecísse hoc signum. 6. Dícitis in Beélzebub ejícere me daemónia. 7. Traxérunt Paulum extra civitátem, aestimántes eum mórtuum esse. 8. Mulíeres fuérunt ad monuméntum ante lucem, et non invénto córpore ejus venérunt dicéntes se etiam visiónem angelórum vidísse, qui dicunt eum vívere. 9. Spero autem in Dómino Jesu, me cito Timótheum míttere ad vos. 10. Símeon respónsum accéperat a Spíritu Sancto se non visúrum mortem nisi prius vidéret Christum Dómini.

EXERCISE XC.

VOCABULARY

revélo (1), to reveal.
aut, or.
praeváleo (2), to prevail.
solvo (3), to loose.
solútus, *past part. of* **solvo**.
at, but.
álii . . . álii, some . . . others.
petra, a rock.
portae ínferi, the gates of hell.
clavis, clavis (*f.*), a key.
quodcúmque, whatsoever.
pars, partis (*f.*), part, quarter.

In illo témpore venit Jesus in partes Caesaréae Philíppi, et interrogábat discípulos suos, dicens, Quem dicunt hómines esse Fílium hóminis? At illi dixérunt, Álii Johánnem Baptístam, álii autem Elíam, álii vero Jeremíam, aut unum ex Prophétis. Dicit illis Jesus, Vos autem quem me esse dícitis? Respóndens Simon Petrus, dixit, Tu es Christus, Fílius Dei vivi. Respóndens autem Jesus, dixit ei, Beátus es, Simon Bar Jona: quia caro et sanguis non revelávit tibi, sed Pater meus, qui in coelis est. Et

ego dico tibi, quia tu es Petrus, et super hanc petram aedificábo Ecclésiam meam, et portae ínferi non praevalébunt advérsus eam. Et tibi dabo claves regni coelórum. Et quodcúmque ligáveris super terram, erit ligátum et in coelis: et quodcúmque sólveris super terram, erit solútum et in coelis.—*St Matthew* xvi, 13.

SECTION LV.

Questions.

Questions are often written in Ecclesiastical Latin with nothing except the note of interrogation to show that the sentence has an interrogative form*—*e.g.:*

Pilátus vocávit Jesum et dixit ei: Tu es rex Judaeórum? *Pilate called Jesus, and said to him, Art thou the king of the Jews?*

If the answer "yes" is expected, the question is introduced by the particle **nonne**—*e.g.:*

Nonne hoc verum est? *surely this is true?*

If the answer "no" is expected, the question is introduced by **num** or **numquid**—*e.g.:*

Numquid hoc verum est? *surely this is not true?*

EXERCISE XCI.

VOCABULARY.

ardens, burning.	**faber, fabri** (*m.*), a carpenter.
dum, while.	**custos, custódis** (*m.*), a keeper.
ambo, both.	**interfício** (3), to kill.
fóvea, a ditch.	**vultis**, you wish, you are willing.
virtútes, miracles.	**prophéto** (1), to prophesy.
Scriptúra, Scripture.	**cado** (3), to fall.

1. Nonne hic est faber, fílius Maríae, frater Jacóbi et Joseph et Judae et Simónis? 2. Nonne et soróres ejus hic nobíscum sunt? 3. Respondérunt ergo Judaéi, et dixérunt ei, Nonne bene dícimus nos, quia Samaritánus es tu, et daemónium habes? 4. Nonne cor nostrum ardens erat in nobis dum loquerétur in viâ, et aperíret nobis Scriptúras? 5. Num custos fratris mei ego sum? 6. Respóndit Pilátus, Numquid ego Judaéus sum? 7. Numquid potest caecus caecum dúcere? Nonne ambo in fóveam cadunt? 8. Numquid et vos vultis discípuli ejus fíeri? 9. Nonne hic est quem quaerunt interfícere? 10. Multi dicent mihi in illâ die, Dómine, Dómine, nonne in nómine tuo prophetávimus, et in nómine tuo daemónia ejécimus, et in nómine tuo virtútes multas fécimus?

* In Classical Latin the particle **-ne** is attached to the first word in the sentence—*e.g.*, **audivístine?** *did you hear?*

EXERCISE XCII.

VOCABULARY.

verē, indeed, truly.
castéllum, a town.
ítaque, so, therefore.
addúco (3), to bring.
sedúco (3), to seduce.
sic, so, thus.
nocte, by night.
unusquísque, each.
áliquis, anyone, someone.
semen, séminis (*n.*), seed.
dissénsio, dissensiónis (*f.*), dissension.
apprehéndo (3), to take, lay hold of.
póntifex, pontíficis (*m.*), chief priest.
princeps, príncipis (*m.*), a ruler.
maledíctus, accursed.
scrutor (1), to search.
revértor (3) (*perf.* **revérsus sum**), to go back.
pergo (3) (*perf.* **perréxi**), to go, proceed.

Ex illâ turbâ, cum audíssent hos sermónes ejus, dicébant, Hic est verē prophéta. Álii dicébant, Hic est Christus. Quidam autem dicébant, Numquid a Galilaéâ venit Christus? Nonne Scriptúra dicit, Quia ex sémine David, et de Béthlehem castéllo, ubi erat David, venit Christus? Dissénsio ítaque facta est in turbâ propter eum. Quidam autem ex ipsis volébant apprehéndere eum; sed nemo misit super eum manus. Venérunt ergo minístri ad pontífices et pharisaéos. Et dixérunt eis illi, Quare non adduxístis illum? Respondérunt minístri, Nunquam sic locútus est homo, sicut hic homo? Respondérunt ergo eis pharisaéi, Numquid et vos sedúcti estis? Numquid ex princípibus áliquis crédidit in eum, aut ex pharisaéis? Sed turba haec, quae non novit legem, maledícti sunt. Dixit Nicodémus ad eos, ille qui venit ad eum nocte, qui unus erat ex ipsis, Numquid lex nostra júdicat hóminem, nisi prius audíerit ab ipso, et cognóverit quid fáciat? Respondérunt, et dixérunt ei, Numquid et tu Galilaéus es? Scrutáre Scriptúras, et vide quia a Galilaéâ prophéta non surgit. Et revérsi sunt unusquísque in domum suam. Jesus autem perréxit ad montem Olivéti.—*St John* vii, 40.

SECTION LVI.

Time.

In Classical Latin the Accusative Case is used (without a preposition) to express "time how long"—*e.g.*:

Manebámus tres horas, *we remained three hours*;

and the Ablative Case to express "time when" and "time within which"—*e.g.*:

Proféctus est tértiâ horâ, *he set out at the third hour*; **redíbo tribus diébus**, *I shall return within three days.*

In Ecclesiastical Latin the above rules may be observed; but the Ablative Case is often used where Classical Latin would require the Accusative, and prepositions are frequently employed.

EXERCISE XCIII.

VOCABULARY.

tértius, third.
quartus, fourth.
cómmodo (1), to lend.
quid? why?
sex, six.
vigília, a watch.
regrédior (3) (*perf.* **regréssus sum**), to return.
otiósus, idle.
excíto (1), to raise up.
tantus, so great, so much.

1. Et resurréxit tértiâ die secúndum Scriptúras, et ascéndit in coelum. 2. Quartâ autem vigíliâ noctis venit ad eos, ámbulans supra mare. 3. Jesus autem plenus Spíritu Sancto regréssus est a Jordáne, et agebátur a Spíritu in desértum diébus quadragínta, et tentabátur a diábolo. 4. Quis vestrum habébit amícum, et ibit ad illum médiâ nocte, et dicet illi, Ámice, cómmoda mihi tres panes? 5. Et mansit ibi duos dies. 6. Quid hic statis totâ die otiósi? 7. Et erat tribus diébus non videns. 8. Erit Fílius hóminis in corde terrae tribus diébus et tribus nóctibus. 9. Quadragínta et sex annis aedificátum est templum, et tu tribus diébus excitábis illud? 10. Dicit Philíppo Jesus, Tanto témpore vobíscum sum, et non cognovístis me?

SECTION LVII.

The Gerund.

The **Gerund** is a verbal noun answering to the English verbal in **-ing.** It may be formed by removing the **-bam** of the Imperfect Indicative, and adding **-ndum**—*e.g.:* **amábam, amándum.** The Gerund is declined like **regnum,** but has no plural. In Ecclesiastical Latin the Gerund may be followed by a direct object—*e.g.:*

Habes potestátem ejiciéndi daemónia, *you have the power of casting out evil spirits.*

The Accusative of the Gerund, with the preposition **ad,** is used to express Purpose—*e.g.:*

Misit discípulos ad praedicándum, *he sent the disciples to preach.*

EXERCISE XCIV.

VOCABULARY.

stupor, stupóris (*m.*), astonishment.
factum est, it came to pass.
lectus, a bed, couch.
tectum, a roof.
cógito (1), to think.
an, or.
jáceo (2), to lie.
tulit, he took up (*perf. of* **fero**).
gaúdium, joy.
sano (1), to heal.
inférre, to bring in.
tégula, a tile.
summítto (3), to let down.
remítto (3), to forgive.
cogitátio, cogitatiónis (*f.*), a thought.
coram (*with Abl.*), before, in the presence of.

1. Et dedit illis potestátem curándi infirmitátes, et ejiciéndi daemónia. 2. Conféstim ergo misi ad te: et tu bene fecísti veniéndo. 3. Qui habet aures audiéndi, aúdiat. 4. Deus autem spei répleat vos omni gaúdio et pace in credéndo. 5. Et factum est in unâ diérum, et ipse sedébat docens. Et erant Pharisaéi sedéntes, et legis doctóres, qui vénerant ex omni castéllo Galilaéae, et Judaéae, et Jerúsalem: et virtus Dómini erat ad sanándum eos. Et ecce viri portántes in lecto hóminem, qui erat paralýticus: et quaerébant eum inférre, et pónere ante eum. Et non inveniéntes quâ parte illum inférrent prae turbâ, ascendérunt supra tectum, et per tégulas summisérunt eum cum lecto in médium ante Jesum. Quorum fidem ut vidit, dixit: Homo, remittúntur tibi peccáta tua. Et coepérunt cogitáre Scribae, et Pharisaéi, dicéntes, Quis est hic qui lóquitur blasphémias? Quis potest dimíttere peccáta, nisi solus Deus? Ut cognóvit autem Jesus cogitatiónes eórum, respóndens, dixit ad illos, Quid cogitátis in córdibus vestris? Quid est facílius dícere, Dimittúntur tibi peccáta: an dícere, Surge, et ámbula? Ut autem sciátis quia Fílius hóminis habet potestátem in terrâ dimitténdi peccáta, (ait paralýtico) Tibi dico, surge, tolle lectum, et vade in domum tuam. Et conféstim consúrgens coram illis tulit lectum, in quo jacébat: et ábiit in domum suam, magníficans Deum. Et stupor apprehéndit omnes, et magnificábant Deum. Et repléti sunt timóre, dicéntes, Quia vídimus mirabília hódie.—*St Luke* v, 17.

SECTION LVIII.

The Gerundive.

The Gerundive is a verbal adjective. It is formed in the same way as the Gerund, but declines like an ordinary adjective: **amándus, amánda, amándum,** etc. Only transitive verbs have Gerundives.

The Gerundive is used in the same way as the Gerund, but agrees with the noun that accompanies it in number, gender, and case, the noun being put into the case required by the construction of the sentence—*e.g.:*

Misit discípulos ad infírmos sanándos, *he sent disciples to heal the sick.*

EXERCISE XCV.

VOCABULARY.

visito (1), to visit.
jusjurándum, an oath.
testaméntum, a testament.
praéeo, to go before.
sciéntia, knowledge.
érigo (3), (*perf.* **erexi**), to lift up.
mémoror (1), to remember, be mindful.
juro (1), to swear.
dírigo (3), (*perf.* **direxi**), to direct.
víscera, bowels, heart.

Et Zacharías replétus est Spíritu Sancto: et prophetávit, dicens, Benedíctus Dóminus Deus Ísraël, quia visitávit, et fecit redemptiónem plebis suae. Et eréxit cornu salútis nobis: in domo David púeri sui. Sicut locútus est per os sanctórum, qui a saéculo sunt, prophetárum ejus: Salútem ex inimícis nostris, et de manu ómnium, qui odérunt nos. Ad faciéndam misericórdiam cum pátribus nostris: et memorári testaménti sui sancti. Jusjurándum, quod jurávit ad Ábraham patrem nostrum, datúrum se nobis: Ut sine timóre, de manu inimicórum nostrórum liberáti, serviámus illi. In sanctitáte, et justítiâ coram ipso, ómnibus diébus nostris. Et tu, puer, prophéta Altíssimi vocáberis: praeíbis enim ante fáciem Dómini paráre vias ejus: Ad dandam sciéntiam salútis plebi ejus: in remissiónem peccatórum eórum; per víscera misericórdiae Dei nostri: in quibus visitávit nos, óriens ex alto: Illumináre his, qui in ténebris, et in umbrâ mortis sedent: ad dirigéndos pedes nostros in viam pacis.—*St Luke* i, 67.

SECTION LIX.

The Gerund and Gerundive (*Continued*).

The Gerund and Gerundive are used with the verb *to be* to express obligation; the Gerundive is used of transitive verbs, the Gerund of intransitive; in the latter case the subject is put in the Dative—*e.g.:*

Hic liber legéndus est, *this book must be read* (Gerundive).
Tibi regrediéndum est, *you must return* (Gerund).

EXERCISE XCVI.

VOCABULARY.

vídeor (*pass. of* **vídeo**), to seem.
furor (1), to steal.
tamen, nevertheless, yet.
inítium, beginning.
convérsor (1), to dwell.
charus (*adj.*), dear.
quisquis, whoever.
resísto (3), to resist (*with Dative*).
praecípue, especially.
tentátio, tentatiónis (*f.*), temptation.
circa (*with Acc.*), about, at.
diléctio, dilectiónis (*f.*), love.

1. Conversántibus illis in Galilaéâ, dixit illis Jesus, Fílius hóminis tradéndus est in manus hóminum, et occídent eum, et tértiâ die resúrget. 2. Qui ergo álium doces, te ipsum non doces: qui praédicas non furándum, furáris. 3. Resisténdo passiónibus, invenítur pax vera cordis, non autem eis serviéndo. 4. Vigilándum est tamen, praecípue circa inítium tentatiónis. 5. Vigiláte et oráte, ut non intrétis in tentatiónem. 6. In me debet amici diléctio stare, et propter me diligéndus est, quisquis tibi bonus visus est, et multum charus in hac vitâ. 7. Nemo est bonus, nisi solus Deus, qui est super ómnia laudándus et in ómnibus benedicéndus. 8. Vigilándum est et orándum, ne tempus otiósē tránseat.

SECTION LX.

The Supine.

The **Supine** is an indeclinable verbal noun, seldom used in Latin constructions, but important as forming one of the principal parts of a Latin verb. The Supine ends in **-um**, and from it the past participle passive is directly formed—*e.g.*, the supine of **amo** is **amátum**, the past participle **amátus**. The four principal parts of the verb are: the 1st person singular of the present indicative (**amo**), the present infinitive (**amáre**), the 1st person singular of the perfect indicative (**amávi**), and the supine (**amátum**). If these four parts of the verb are known, all the tenses of an irregular verb can then be formed.*

The Supine is occasionally used to express purpose (in Classical Latin only after a verb of motion)—*e.g.*:

Misit hómines respónsum datum, *he sent men to give an answer.*

Another form of the Supine ends in **-u**, and is used after an adjective where English employs an infinitive, *e.g.*, **mirabile dictu,** *wonderful to relate.*

---

* For the principal parts of irregular verbs see page 106.

EXERCISE XCVII.

Vocabulary.

gládius (2), a sword.
nurus (4), a daughter-in-law.
socrus (4), a mother-in-law.
tantum (*adv.*), only.
merces, mercédis (*f.*), reward.
arbitror (1), to think.
séparo (1), to separate, set at variance.
domésticus (*adj.*), belonging to a household.
frígidus (*adj.*), cold.
dignus, worthy (*followed by Abl.*).
potum (*supine of* **poto**), to drink.

Nolíte arbitrári quia pacem vénerim míttere in terram: non veni pacem míttere, sed gládium. Veni enim separáre hóminem advérsus patrem suum, et fíliam advérsus matrem suam, et nurum advérsus socrum suam. Et inimíci hóminis, doméstici ejus. Qui amat patrem aut matrem plus quam me, non est me dignus: et qui amat fílium aut fíliam super me, non est me dignus. Et qui non áccipit crucem suam et séquitur me, non est me dignus. Qui ínvenit ánimam suam, perdet illam: et qui perdíderit ánimam suam propter me, invéniet eam. Qui récipit vos, me récipit: et qui me récipit, récipit eum qui me misit. Qui récipit prophétam in nómine prophétae, mercédem prophétae accípiet: et qui récipit justum in nómine justi, mercédem justi accípiet. Et quicúnque potum déderit uni ex mínimis istis cálicem aquae frígidae tantum in nómine discípuli: amen dico vobis, non perdet mercédem suam. —*St Matthew* x, 34.

EXERCISE XCVIII.

Vocabulary.

festus, festive.
exístimo (1), to think.
comitátus (4), company.
requíro (3), to seek.
cognátus, a kinsman.
admíror (1), to wonder.
dóleo (2), to sorrow, grieve.
stúpeo (2), to be astonished.
consuetúdo, consuetúdinis (*f.*), a custom.
consúmmo (1), to fulfil, consummate.
iter, itíneris (*n.*), journey.
noti (*pl.*), acquaintances.
tríduum, three days.
opórtet (*impersonal*), it behoves.
súbditus, subject.
aetas, aetátis (*f.*), age.

Cum factus esset Jesus annórum duódecim, ascendéntibus illis Jerúsalem secúndum consuetúdinem diéi festi, consummatísque diébus, cum redírent, remánsit puer Jesus in Jerúsalem, et non cognovérunt paréntes ejus. Existimántes autem illum esse in comitátu, venérunt iter diéi, et requirébant eum inter cognátos et notos. Et non inveniéntes, regréssi sunt in Jerúsalem, requiréntes eum. Et factum est, post tríduum invenérunt illum in templo, sedéntem in médio doctórum, audiéntem illos et interrogántem eos. Stupébant autem omnes, qui eum audiébant,

super prudéntiâ et respónsis ejus. Et vidéntes admiráti sunt. Et dixit Mater ejus ad illum, Fili, quid fecísti nobis sic? Ecce, pater tuus et ego doléntes quaerébamus te. Et ait ad illos, Quid est, quod me quaerebátis? Nesciebátis, quia in his, quae Patris mei sunt, opórtet me esse? Et ipsi non intellexérunt verbum, quod locútus est ad eos. Et descéndit cum eis, et venit Názareth: et erat súbditus illis. Et Mater ejus conservábat ómnia verba haec in corde suo. Et Jesus proficiébat sapiéntiâ, et aetáte, et grátiâ apud Deum et hómines.—*St Luke* ii, 42.

EXERCISE XCIX.

VOCABULARY.

primus (*adj.*), first.
secúndus (*adj.*), second.
scabéllum, a footstool.
donec, until.
mandátum, a commandment.
símilis (3*rd Decl. adj.*), like.
cóngrego (1), to gather together.
quisquam, anyone.

Accessérunt ad Jesum Pharisaéi: et interrogávit eum unus ex eis legis doctor, tentans eum: Mágister, quod est mandátum magnum in lege? Ait illi Jesus, Díliges Dóminum Deum tuum ex toto corde tuo, et in totâ ánimâ tuâ, et in totâ mente tuâ. Hoc est máximum et primum mandátum. Secúndum autem símile est huic: Díliges próximum tuum sicut teípsum. In his duóbus mandátis univérsa lex pendet, et prophétae. Congregátis autem Pharisaéis, interrogávit eos Jesus, dicens, Quid vobis vidétur de Christo? cujus fílius est? Dicunt ei, David. Ait illis, Quómodo ergo David in spíritu vocat eum Dóminum, dicens, Dixit Dóminus Dómino meo, Sede a dextris meis, donec ponam inimícos tuos scabéllum pedum tuórum? Si ergo David vocat eum Dóminum, quómodo fílius ejus est? Et nemo póterat ei respondére verbum: neque ausus fuit quisquam ex illâ die eum ámplius interrogáre.—*St Matthew* xxii, 35.

EXERCISE C.

VOCABULARY.

sero (*adv.*), late.
metus (4), fear.
retíneo (2), to retain.
clavus (2), a nail.
octo, eight.
deínde, then.
fores, forum (*plur.*) (*f.*), doors.
insúffio (1), to breathe upon.
fixúra, a print.
digitus (2), a finger.
intus (*adv.*), within.
afféro, to bring nigh.

Cum sero esset die illo, unâ sabbatórum, et fores essent clausae, ubi erant discípuli congregáti, propter metum Judaeórum, venit

Jesus, et stetit in médio, et dixit eis, Pax vobis. Et cum hoc dixísset, osténdit eis manus et latus. Gavísi sunt ergo discípuli, viso Dómino. Dixit ergo eis íterum, Pax vobis. Sicut misit me Pater, et ego mitto vos. Haec cum dixísset, insufflávit, et dixit eis, Accípite Spíritum Sanctum: quorum remiséritis peccáta, remittúntur eis; et quorum retinuéritis, reténta sunt. Thomas autem unus ex duódecim, qui dícitur Dídymus, non erat cum eis, quando venit Jesus. Dixérunt ergo ei álii discípuli, Vídimus Dóminum. Ille autem dixit eis, Nisi vídero in mánibus ejus fixúram clavórum, et mittam dígitum meum in locum clavórum, et mittam manum meam in latus ejus, non credam. Et post dies octo, íterum erant discípuli ejus intus, et Thomas cum eis. Venit Jesus, jánuis clausis, et stetit in médio, et dixit, Pax vobis. Deínde dicit Thomae, Infer dígitum tuum huc, et vide manus meas, et affer manum tuam, et mitte in latus meum: et noli esse incrédulus, sed fidélis. Respóndit Thomas, et dixit ei, Dóminus meus, et Deus meus. Dixit ei Jesus, Quia vidísti me, Thoma, credidísti: beati, qui non vidérunt, et credidérunt.—*St John* xx 19.

SUMMARY OF ACCIDENCE

DECLENSIONS.

I.—NOUNS.

		First.	Second.			Third.		
		rŏsa, *rose* (fem.).	**dŏminus**, *lord* (mas.).	**magister**, *master* (mas.).	**regnum**, *kingdom* (neut.).	**rex**, *king* (mas.).	**mons**, *mountain* (mas.).	**hostis**, *enemy* (mas.).
Singular.	Nom.	rŏsa	dŏminus	magister	regnum	rex	mons	hostis
	Voc.	rosa	domine	magister	regnum	rex	mons	hostis
	Acc.	rosam	dominum	magistrum	regnum	rēgem	montem	hostem
	Gen.	rosae	dominī	magistrī	regnī	rēgis	montis	hostis
	Dat.	rosae	dominō	magistrō	regnō	rēgī	montī	hostī
	Abl.	rosā	dominō	magistrō	regnō	rēge	monte	hoste
Plural.	Nom.	rosae	dominī	magistrī	regnă	rēgēs	montēs	hostēs
	Voc.	rosae	dominī	magistrī	regna	rēgēs	montēs	hostēs
	Acc.	rosās	dominōs	magistrōs	regna	rēgēs	montēs	hostēs
	Gen.	rosārum	dominōrum	magistrōrum	regnōrum	rēgum	montium*	hostium*
	Dat.	rosīs	dominīs	magistrīs	regnis	rēgibus	montibus	hostibus
	Abl.	rosīs	dominīs	magistrīs	regnis	rēgibus	montibus	hostibus

		Third (*continued*).		Fourth.		Fifth.
		ŏpus, *work* (neut.).	**nōmen**, *name* (neut.).	**grădus**, *step* (mas.).	**gĕnu**, *knee* (neut.).	**diēs**, *day* (mas. and fem.).
Singular.	Nom.	ŏpus	nōmen	grădus	gĕnu	diēs
	Voc.	opus	nōmen	gradus	genu	diēs
	Acc.	opus	nōmen	gradum	genu	diem
	Gen.	operis	nōminis	gradūs	genūs	diei
	Dat.	operī	nōminī	gradui	genū	diei
	Abl.	opere	nōmine	gradū	genū	diē
Plural.	Nom.	operă	nōmină	gradūs	genua	diēs
	Voc.	opera	nomina	gradūs	genua	diēs
	Acc.	opera	nōmina	gradūs	genua	diēs
	Gen.	operum	nōminum	graduum	genuum	diērum
	Dat.	operibus	nōminibus	gradibus	genibus	diēbus
	Abl.	operibus	nōminibus	gradibus	genibus	diēbus

* Two classes of 3rd declension nouns have **-ium** in the Gen. Plur.—viz.:
(1) Parisyllabics—*i.e.*, those whose stem does not increase in the gen. sing., as **hostis, hostis**; **nubes, nubis**, etc.
(2) Those with monosyllabic stems ending in two consonants—*e.g.*, **mons**, stem **mont-**; **nox**, stem **noct-**, etc.

II.—ADJECTIVES.

2nd Declension.

	bŏnus, *good.*					
	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	bŏnus	bonă	bonum	bonī	bonae	bonă
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

	Pulcher, *fair.*					
	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	pulcher	pulchră	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchră
Voc.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Gen.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Abl.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

	mĭser, *wretched.*					
	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	mĭser	miseră	miserum	miserī	miserae	miseră
Voc.	miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	misera
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

3rd Declension.

	Tristis, *sad.*				dives, *rich.**	
	Singular.		*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
	Masc., Fem.	*Neuter.*	*Masc., Fem.*	*Neuter.*	*Masc., Fem.*	*Masc., Fem.*
Nom.	tristis	tristĕ	tristēs	tristia	dives	divitēs
Voc.	tristis	triste	tristēs	tristia	dives	divitēs
Acc.	tristem	triste	tristēs	tristia	divitem	divitēs
Gen.	tristis		tristium		divitis	divitum
Dat.	tristī		tristibus		divitī	divitibus
Abl.	tristī		tristibus		divite	divitibus

* dives is not found in the neuter.

	tristior, *sadder.*				felix, *happy.*			
	Singular.		*Plural.*		*Singular.*		*Plural.*	
	Masc., Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc., Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc., Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc., Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	tristior	tristius	tristiorēs	tristiorā	fēlix	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēliciă
Voc.	tristior	tristius	tristiorēs	tristiorā	felix	felix	felicēs	felicia
Acc.	tristiorem	tristius	tristiorēs	tristiorā	felicem	felix	felicēs	felicia
Gen.	tristioris		tristiorum		felicis		felicium	
Dat.	tristiorī		tristioribus		felicī		felicibus	
Abl.	tristiore		tristioribus		felicī		felicibus	

	prūdens, *prudent.*			
	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	Masc., Fem.	*Neuter.*	*Masc., Fem.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	prūdens	prūdens	prūdentēs	prūdentiă
Voc.	prudens	prudens	prudentēs	prudentia
Acc.	prudentem	prudens	prudentēs	prudentia
Gen.	prudentis		prudentium	
Dat.	prudentī		prudentibus	
Abl.	prudentī		prudentibus	

	ūnus, *one.*			duo, *two.*			trēs, *three.*	
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc., Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duŏ	duae	duŏ	trēs	triă
Voc.	une	una	unum	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Acc.	unum	unam	unum	duŏs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	unĭus	unĭus	unĭus	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	
Dat.	unī	unī	unī	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	
Abl.	unō	unā	unō	duōbus	duābus	duobus	tribus	

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are compared in three degrees:

(1) Positive:	**dūrus**, *hard.*	**tristis**, *sad.*
(2) Comparative:	**durior**, *harder.*	**tristior**, *sadder.*
(3) Superlative:	**durissimus**, *hardest.*	**tristissimus**, *saddest.*

The Comparative is formed from the Positive by adding the suffix **-ior** to the last consonant of the Stem; the Superlative generally by adding **-issimus** to the last consonant of the Stem.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
durus	**dur-ior**	**dur-issimus**
tristis	**trist-ior**	**trist-issimus**
audax	**audac-ior**	**audac-issimus**

Adjectives ending in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nominative Singular Masculine.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pulcher, *beautiful*	**pulchrior**	**pulcherrimus**
miser, *wretched*	**miserior**	**miserrimus**
acer, *keen*	**acrior**	**acerrimus**
celer, *swift*	**celerior**	**celerrimus**

Six adjectives ending in **-ilis** form the Superlative by doubling the last consonant of the Stem and adding **-imus** :

	facilis, *easy.*	**similis**, *like.*	**gracilis**, *slender.*
	difficilis, *difficult.*	**dissimilis**, *unlike.*	**humilis**, *lowly.*
E.g.:	**facilis**	**facilior**	**facillimus**
	difficilis	**difficilior**	**difficillimus**, *etc.*

Irregular Comparison.

Some Comparatives and Superlatives are formed from Stems distinct from that of the Positive:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bonus, *good.*	**melior**	**optimus**
malus, *bad.*	**pējor**	**pessimus**
parvus, *small.*	**minor**	**minimus**
multus, *much.*	**plūs**	**plurimus**
magnus, *great.*	**mājor**	**maximus**
senex, *old.*	**natu major** / **senior**	**natu maximus**
juvenis, *young.*	**natu minor** / **junior**	**natu minimus**
dives, *rich.*	**ditior** / **divitior**	**ditissimus** / **divitissimus**
vetus, *old.*	**vetustior**	**veterrimus**

N.B.—**Senior** means *old rather than young*, and **junior** *young rather than old.* **Plus** is only found in the Neuter Singular.

Adjectives compounded with **-dĭcus, -fĭcus, -vŏlus** (from **dīco, facio, volo**), form the Comparative and Superlative as if from participles in **-ens.**

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
maledĭcus, *evil-speaking.*	**maledĭcentior**	**maledĭcentissimus**
benefĭcus, *beneficent.*	**beneficentior**	**beneficentissimus**
benevŏlus, *well-wishing.*	**benevolentior**	**benevolentissimus**

Also **providus,** *provident,* **providentior, providentissimus.**

Adjectives in **-eus, -ius, -uus** are generally compared by using the adverbs **magis,** *more,* **maxime,** *most,* with the Positive: **dubius,** *doubtful,* **magis dubius,** *more doubtful,* **maxime dubius,** *most doubtful.* **Pius,** *pious,* has superlative **piissimus.**

Some Comparatives and Superlatives have no Positive, but correspond to Adverbs from the same Stem.

Adverb.	Comparative Adjective.	Superlative Adjective.
extrā, *outside.*	**extĕrior**	**extrēmus, extimus**
intrā, *within.*	**intĕrior**	**intimus**
suprā, *above.*	**supĕrior**	**suprēmus, summus**
infrā, *below.*	**infĕrior**	**infimus, imus**
citrā, *on this side.*	**citĕrior**	**citimus**
ultrā, *beyond.*	**ultĕrior**	**ultimus**
prae, *before.*	**prior**	**primus,** *first.*
post, *after.*	**postĕrior**	**postrēmus,** *last.*
prŏpĕ, *near.*	**propior**	**proximus**

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs derived from adjectives and ending in **-ē, -ō, -ter,** form Comparative in **-ius,** Superlative in **-issimē.**

Adjective.	Adverb.	Comparative.	Superlative.
dignus, *worthy.*	**dignē**	**dignius**	**dignissimē**
tūtus, *safe.*	**tūtō**	**tutius**	**tutissimē**
fortis, *brave.*	**fortiter**	**fortius**	**fortissimē**
prudens, *prudent.*	**prudenter**	**prudentius**	**prudentissimē**

Irregular Comparison has corresponding forms in Adverbs.

Adverb.	Comparative.	Superlative.
benĕ, *well.*	**melius**	**optimē**
malĕ, *ill.*	**pējus**	**pessimē**
paullum, *little.*	**minus**	**minimē**
multum, *much.*	**plūs**	**plūrimum**
magnŏpĕre, *greatly.*	**magis**	**maximē**
diū, *long.*	**diutius**	**diutissimē**
intus, *within.*	**intĕrius**	**intimē**

N.B.—**Magis** means *more* in degree; **plus,** *more* in quantity.

III.—PRONOUNS.

		1st Person I	2nd Person You	3rd Person Himself	This *Masc.*	This *Fem.*	This *Neut.*	Who *Masc.*	Who *Fem.*	Who *Neut.*	Who?
Singular.	Nom.	ĕgŏ	tū	[ipse]	hĭc	haec	hŏc	quī	quae	quŏd	quis?
	Acc.	mē	tē	sē	hunc	hanc	hŏc	quem	quam	quŏd	*masc. nom.*
	Gen.	mĕī	tuī	suī	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quid?
	Dat.	mihĭ	tibĭ	sibĭ	huic	huic	huic	cuī	cuī	cuī	*neut. nom.*
	Abl.	mē	tē	sē	hōc	hāc	hōc	quō	quā	quō	*and acc.*
Plural.	Nom.	nōs	vōs	[ipsī]	hī	hae	haec	quī	quae	quae	other cases
	Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē	hōs	hās	haec	quōs	quās	quae	like quī
	Gen.	nostrum (-trī)	vestrum (-trī)	suī	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
	Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibĭ	hīs	hīs	hīs	quĭbus (or quīs) (all genders)			
	Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē	hīs	hīs	hīs	quĭbus (or quīs) (,, ,,)			

		3rd Person He	3rd Person She	3rd Person It	The Same *Masc.*	The Same *Fem.*	The Same *Neut.*	That *Masc.*	That *Fem.*	That *Neut.*	
Singular.	Nom.	is	ĕă	id	īdem	eadem	idem	illĕ	illă	illŭd	iste, *that* or *this*, and
	Acc.	eum	eam	id	eundem	eandem	idem	illum	illam	illŭd	ipse, *self*, decline like ille
	Gen.	ējus	ējus	ējus	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem	illĭus	illĭus	illĭus	(But ipse has *neut. sing.*
	Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	illī	illī	illī	ipsum)
	Abl.	ĕō	ĕā	ĕō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	illō	illā	illō	
Plur.	Nom.	ēī	ĕae (*Regular*)	ĕă	eīdem	eaedem (*Regular*)	eadem	illī	illae (*Regular*)	illă	N.B.— eī, eīs are sometimes written ii, iis

The following have Genitive singular, all genders, in **-ius**, Dative in **-i**. **Alter** (**alterius**), *one of two*; **uter** (**utrius**), *which of two*; neuter (neutrius), *neither*; **ūnus**, *one*; **ullus**, *any*; **nullus**, *none*; **sōlus**, *only*; **tōtus**, *whole*; **alius**, *other*. The *neuter sing.* of alius is aliud.

NUMERALS.

Arabic Numerals.	Roman Numerals.	Cardinals, answering the question Quot? *how many?*	Ordinals, answering the question Quotus? *which in order of number?*	Distributives, answering the question Quotēnī? *how many each?*	Numeral Adverbs, answering the question Quoties? *how many times?*
			m. *-ŭs*, f. *-ă*, n. *-um.*	m. *-ī*, f. *-ae*, n. *-ă.*	
1	I	ūnus	prīmus (prior), *first*	singŭli, *one each*	semel, *once*
2	II	duo	secundus (alter), *second*	bīnī, *two each*	bis, *twice*
3	III	trēs	tertius, *third*, etc.	ternī, *or* trīnī, *three each*, etc.	ter, *three times*, etc.
4	IIII or IV	quattuor	quartus	quaternī	quater
5	V	quinque	quintus	quīnī	quinquies
6	VI	sex	sextus	sēnī	sexies
7	VII	septem	septīmus	septēnī	septies
8	VIII or IIX	octo	octāvus	octōnī	octies
9	VIIII or IX	nōvem	nōnus	novēnī	novies
10	X	dĕcem	decīmus	dēnī	decies
11	XI	undĕcim	undecimus	undēnī	undecies
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī	duodecies
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni dēnī	tredecies
14	XIIII or XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaterni dēnī	quattuordecies
15	XV	quindecim	quintus decimus	quīnī dēnī	quindecies
16	XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī	sēdecies
17	XVII	septemdecim	septimus decimus	septēni dēnī	septiesdecies
18	XVIII or XIIX	duŏdēvīgintī / octodecim	duodēvīcesimus	duodēvīcenī	duodēvīcies
19	XVIIII or XIX	undēvīginti / novendecim	undēvicesimus	undēvicēnī	undēvicies

NUMERALS—*Continued.*

Arabic Numerals.	Roman Numerals.	Cardinals, answering the question Quot? *how many?*	Ordinals, answering the question Quotus? *which in order of number?*	Distributives answering the question Quotēnī? *how many each?*	Numeral Adverbs, answering the question Quotiens? *how many times?*
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcesimus	vīcēnī	vīcies
21	XXI	unus et viginti	unus et vicesimus	vicēnī singulī	semel et vicies
22	XXII	duo et viginti	alter et vicesimus	vicēnī binī	bis et vicies
30	XXX	trīginta	trīgesimus	trīcēnī	trīcies
40	XXXX or XL	quādrāgintā	quādrāgesimus	quādrāgēnī	quādragies
50	L	quinquāginta	quinquāgesimus	quinquāgēni	quinquāgies
60	LX	sexāginta	sexāgesimus	sexāgēnī	sexāgies
70	LXX	septuāginta	septuāgesimus	septuāgēnī	septuāgies
80	LXXX or XXC	octōginta	octōgesimus	octōgēnī	octōgies
90	LXXXX or XC	nōnāginta	nōnāgesimus	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgies
100	C	centum	centesimus	centēnī	centies
101	CI	centum et unus	centesimus primus	centēni singulī	centies semel
200	CC	ducentī, ae, a	ducentesimus	ducēnī	ducenties
300	CCC	trecenti, ae, a	trecentesimus	trecēnī	trecenties
400	CCCC	quadringenti	quadringentesimus	quadringēnī	quadringenties
500	IↃ or D	quingenti	quingentesimus	quingēnī	quingenties
600	IↃↃ	sescenti	sescentesimus	sēscēnī	sescenties
700	IↃↃↃ	septingenti	septingentesimus	septingēnī	septingenties
800	IↃↃↃↃ	octingenti	octingentesimus	octingēnī	octingenties
900	IↃↃↃↃ	nongenti	nongentesimus	nongēnī	nongenties
1,000	cIↃ or M	millĕ	millesimus	singula mīlia	mīlies
2,000	cIↃↃIↃ or MM	duo mīlia	bis-millesimus	bīna mīlia	bis mīlies

REGULAR VERBS.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

		PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE SIMPLE.	PERFECT AND AORIST.	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
First Conjugation.		*I love, am loving, do love.*	*I was loving.*	*I shall love.*	*I have loved.* *I loved.*	*I had loved.*	*I shall have loved.*
	Sing. 1	Ămō	ămā-bam	ămā-bō	ămāv-I	ămāv-ĕram	ămāv-ĕrō
	2.	ămā-s	ămā-bās	ămā-bĭs	ămāv-IstI	ămāv-ĕrās	ămāv-ĕrĭs
	3.	ămă-t	ămā-băt	ămā-bĭt	ămāv-it	ămāv-ĕrăt	ămāv-ĕrĭt
	Plur. 1.	ămā-mŭs	ămā-bāmŭs	ămā-bĭmŭs	ămāv-ĭmŭs	ămāv-ĕrāmŭs	ămāv-ĕrĭmus
	2.	ămā-tĭs	ămā-bātĭs	ămā-bĭtĭs	ămāv-IstĭS	ămāv-ĕrātĭs	ămāv-ĕrĭtis
	3.	ămā-nt	ămā-bānt	ămā-būnt	ămāv-ērūnt *or* -ērĕ	ămāv-ĕrānt	ămāv-ĕrint
Second Conjugation.		*I advise, am advising, do advise.*	*I was advising.*	*I shall advise.*	*I have advised.* *I advised.*	*I had advised.*	*I shall have advised.*
	Sing. 1.	Mŏnĕ-o	mŏnē-bam	mŏnē-bō	mŏnŭ-I	mŏnŭ-ĕram	mŏnŭ-ĕrō
	2.	mŏnē-s	mŏnē-bās	mŏnē-bĭs	mŏnŭ-IstI	mŏnŭ-ĕrās	mŏnŭ-ĕrĭs
	3.	mŏnĕ-t	mŏnē-băt	mŏnē-bĭt	mŏnŭ-it	mŏnŭ-ĕrăt	mŏnŭ-ĕrĭt
	Plur. 1.	mŏnē-mŭs	mŏnē-bāmŭs	mŏnē-bĭmŭs	mŏnŭ-ĭmŭs	mŏnŭ-ĕrāmŭs	mŏnŭ-ĕrĭmŭs
	2.	mŏnē-tĭs	mŏnē-bātĭs	mŏnē-bĭtĭs	mŏnŭ-IstĭS	mŏnŭ-ĕrātis	mŏnŭ-ĕrĭtis
	3.	mŏnē-nt	mŏnē-bānt	mŏnē-būnt	mŏnŭ-ērūnt *or* ērĕ	mŏnŭ-ĕrānt	mŏnŭ-ĕrint
Third Conjugation.		*I rule, am ruling, do rule.*	*I was ruling.*	*I shall rule.*	*I have ruled.* *I ruled.*	*I had ruled.*	*I shall have ruled.*
	Sing. 1.	Rĕg-ō	rĕg-ēbam	rĕg-am	rĕx-I	rĕx-ĕram	rĕx-ĕrō
	2.	rĕg-is	rĕg-ēbās	rĕg-ēs	rĕx-IstI	rĕx-ĕrās	rĕx-ĕrĭs
	3.	rĕg-ĭt	rĕg-ēbăt	rĕg-ĕt	rĕx-it	rĕx-ĕrăt	rĕx-ĕrĭt
	Plur. 1.	rĕg-ĭmŭs	rĕg-ēbāmŭs	rĕg-ēmŭs	rĕx-ImŭS	rĕx-ĕrāmŭs	rĕx-ĕrĭmŭs
	2.	rĕg-ĭtĭs	rĕg-ēbātĭs	rĕg-ētĭs	rĕx-IstĭS	rĕx-ĕrātĭs	rĕx-ĕrĭtis
	3.	rĕg-ŭnt	rĕg-ēbānt	rĕg-ĕnt	rĕx-ērūnt *or* ērĕ	rĕx-ĕrānt	rĕx-ĕrint
Fourth Conjugation.		*I hear, am hearing, do hear.*	*I was hearing.*	*I shall hear.*	*I have heard.* *I heard.*	*I had heard.*	*I shall have heard.*
	Sing. 1.	Audĭ-ō	audī-ēbam	audī-am	audīv-I	audīv-ĕram	audīv-ĕrō
	2.	audī-s	audī-ēbās	audī-ēs	audīv-IstI	audīv-ĕrās	audīv-ĕrĭs
	3.	audĭ-t	audī-ēbăt	audī-ĕt	audīv-it	audīv-ĕrăt	audīv-ĕrĭt
	Plur. 1.	audī-mŭs	audī-ēbāmŭs	audī-ēmŭs	audīv-ĭmŭs	audīv-ĕrāmŭs	audīv-ĕrĭmŭs
	2.	audī-tĭs	audī-ēbātĭs	audī-ētĭs	audīv-IstĭS	audīv-ĕrātĭs	audīv-ĕrĭtis
	3.	audī-unt	audī-ēbānt	audī-ĕnt	audīv-ērūnt *or* -ērĕ	audīv-ĕrānt	audīv-ĕrint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.
First Conjugation. Sing. 1.	Ămem	ămārem	āmāverim	āmāvissem
2.	āmēs	āmārēs	āmāveris	āmāvissēs
3.	āmet	āmāret	āmāverit	āmāvisset
Plur. 1.	āmēmus	āmārēmus	āmāverimus	āmāvissēmus
2.	āmētis	āmārētis	āmāveritis	āmāvissētis
3.	ament	āmārent	āmāverint	āmāvissent
Second Conjugation. Sing. 1.	mŏnĕam	mŏnērem	mŏnŭĕrim	mŏnŭissem
2.	mŏnĕās	mŏnērēs	mŏnŭĕris	mŏnŭissēs
3.	mŏnĕat	mŏnēret	mŏnŭĕrit	mŏnŭisset
Plur. 1.	mŏnĕāmus	mŏnērēmus	mŏnŭĕrimus	mŏnŭissēmus
2.	mŏnĕātis	mŏnērētis	mŏnŭĕritis	mŏnŭissētis
3.	mŏnĕant	mŏnērent	mŏnŭĕrint	mŏnŭissent
Third Conjugation. Sing. 1.	rĕgam	rĕgĕrem	rexĕrim	rexissem
2.	rĕgās	rĕgĕrēs	rexĕris	rexissēs
3.	rĕgat	rĕgĕret	rexĕrit	rexisset
Plur. 1.	rĕgāmus	rĕgĕrēmus	rexĕrimus	rexissēmus
2.	rĕgātis	rĕgĕrētis	rexĕritis	rexissētis
3.	rĕgant	rĕgĕrent	rexĕrint	rexissent
Fourth Conjugation. Sing. 1.	audiam	audīrem	audīverim	audīvissem
2.	audiās	audīrēs	audīveris	audīvissēs
3.	audiat	audīret	audīverit	audīvisset
Plur. 1.	audiāmus	audīrēmus	audīverimus	audīvissēmus
2.	audiātis	audīrētis	audīveritis	audīvissētis
3.	audiant	audīrent	audīverint	audīvissent

ACTIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.				
	First Conjugation.	*Second Conjugation.*	*Third Conjugation.*	*Fourth Conjugation.*
	Sing. ămā, *love* *Plur.* ămāte	mŏnē, *advise* mŏnēte	rĕgĕ, *rule* rĕgīte	audī, *hear* audīte

INFINITIVE MOOD.				
Present	*to love* ămāre	*to advise* mŏnēre	*to rule* rĕgĕre	*to hear* audīre
Perfect	*to have loved* ămāvisse	*to have advised* mŏnŭisse	*to have ruled* rexisse	*to have heard* audīvisse
Future	*to be about to love* ămātūrus esse	*to be about to advise* mŏnĭtūrus esse	*to be about to rule* rectūrus esse	*to be about to hear* audītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES.				
Present	*loving* ămans	*advising* mŏnens	*ruling* rĕgens	*hearing* audĭens
Future	*about to love* ămātūrus	*about to advise* mŏnĭtūrus	*about to rule* rectūrus	*about to hear* audītūrus

GERUND.				
	loving ămandum	*advising* mŏnendum	*ruling* rĕgendum	*hearing* audĭendum

SUPINE.				
	to love ămātum ămātū	*to advise* monĭtum monĭtū	*to rule* rectum rectū	*to hear* audītum auditū

THE VERB SUM: I AM.

INDICATIVE.

	Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Future.*	*Perfect.*	*Pluperfect.*	*Future-Perfect.*
	I am	*I was*	*I shall be*	*I have been*	*I had been*	*I shall have been*
Sing. 1	sum	eram	ero	fui	fueram	fuero
2	es	eras	eris	fuisti	fueras	fueris
3	est	erat	erit	fuit	fuerat	fuerit
Plur. 1	sumus	erāmus	erimus	fuimus	fuerāmus	fuerimus
2	estis	erātis	eritis	fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis
3	sunt	erant	erunt	fuerunt	fuerant	fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Perfect.*	*Pluperfect.*
Sing. 1	sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
2	sis	essēs	fueris	fuissēs
3	sit	esset	fuerit	fuisset
Plur. 1	simus	essēmus	fuerimus	fuissēmus
2	sitis	essētis	fueritis	fuissētis
3	sint	essent	fuerint	fuissent

IMPERATIVE.

es .. *be thou*
este .. *be ye*

INFINITIVE.

Present .. esse .. .. *to be*
Perfect .. fuisse .. .. *to have been*
Future .. futūrus esse .. *to be about to be*

PARTICIPLE.

Future .. futūrus .. *about to be*

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
	I am loved, or *being loved.*	*I was being loved.*	*I shall be loved.*	*I have been loved*, or *I was loved.*	*I had been loved.*	*I shall have been loved.*
Sing. 1.	amor	amābar	amābor	amātus sum	amātus eram	amātus ero
2.	amāris	amābāris	amāberis	amātus es	amātus erās	amātus eris
3.	amātur	amābātur	amābitur	amātus est	amātus erat	amātus erit
Plur. 1.	amāmur	amābāmur	amābimur	amāti sumus	amāti erāmus	amāti erimus
2.	amāmini	amabāmini	amābimini	amāti estis	amāti erātis	amāti eritis
3.	amantur	amabantur	amābuntur	amāti sunt	amāti erant	amāti erunt
	I am advised, or *being advised.*	*I was being advised.*	*I shall be advised.*	*I have been, I was, advised.*	*I had been advised.*	*I shall have been advised.*
Sing. 1.	moneor	monēbar	monēbor	monitus sum	monitus eram	monitus ero
2.	monēris	monēbāris	monēberis	monitus es	monitus erās	monitus eris
3.	monētur	monēbātur	monēbitur	monitus est	monitus erat	monitus erit
Plur. 1.	monēmur	monēbāmur	monēbimur	moniti sumus	moniti erāmus	moniti erimus
2.	monēmini	monēbāmini	monēbimini	moniti estis	moniti erātis	moniti eritis
3.	monentur	monēbantur	monēbuntur	moniti sunt	moniti erant	moniti erunt
	I am ruled, or *being ruled.*	*I was being ruled.*	*I shall be ruled.*	*I have been, I was, ruled.*	*I had been ruled.*	*I shall have been ruled.*
Sing. 1.	regor	regēbar	regar	rectus sum	rectus eram	rectus ero
2.	regeris	regēbāris	regeris	rectus es	rectus erās	rectus eris
3.	regitur	regēbātur	regetur	rectus est	rectus erat	rectus erit
Plur. 1.	regimur	regēbāmur	regemur	recti sumus	recti erāmus	recti erimus
2.	regimini	regēbāmini	regemini	recti estis	recti erātis	recti eritis
3.	reguntur	regēbantur	regentur	recti sunt	recti erant	recti erunt
	I am heard, or *being heard.*	*I was being heard.*	*I shall be heard.*	*I have been, I was, heard.*	*I had been heard.*	*I shall have been heard.*
Sing. 1.	audior	audiēbar	audiar	audītus sum	audītus eram	audītus ero
2.	audīris	audiēbāris	audiēris	audītus es	audītus erās	audītus eris
3.	audītur	audiēbātur	audiētur	audītus est	audītus erat	audītus erit
Plur. 1.	audīmur	audiēbāmur	audiēmur	audīti sumus	audīti erāmus	audīti erimus
2.	audīmini	audiēbāmini	audiēmini	audīti estis	audīti erātis	audīti eritis
3.	audiuntur	audiēbantur	audiēntur	audīti sunt	audīti erant	audīti erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Sing. 1.	amer	amārer	amātus sim	amātus essem
2.	amēris	amārēris	amatus sis	amatus essēs
3.	amētur	amārētur	amatus sit	amatus esset
Plur. 1.	amēmur	amārēmur	amati simus	amati essēmus
2.	amēmini	amārēmini	amati sitis	amati essētis
3.	amentur	amārentur	amati sint	amati essent
Sing. 1.	monear	monērer	monītus sim	monītus essem
2.	moneāris	monērēris	monitus sis	monitus essēs
3.	moneātur	monērētur	monitus sit	monitus esset
Plur. 1.	moneāmur	monērēmur	moniti simus	moniti essēmus
2.	moneāmini	monērēmini	moniti sitis	moniti essētis
3.	moneantur	monērentur	moniti sint	moniti essent
Sing. 1.	regar	regĕrer	rectus sim	rectus essem
2.	regāris	regerēris	rectus sis	rectus essēs
3.	regātur	regerētur	rectus sit	rectus esset
Plur. 1.	regāmur	regerēmur	recti simus	recti essēmus
2.	regāmini	regerēmini	recti sitis	recti essētis
3.	regantur	regerentur	recti sint	recti essent
Sing. 1.	audiar	audīrer	audītus sim	audītus essem
2.	audiāris	audirēris	audītus sis	audītus essēs
3.	audiātur	audirētur	audītus sit	audītus esset
Plur. 1.	audiāmur	audirēmur	audīti simus	audīti essēmus
2.	audiāmini	audirēmini	audīti sitis	audīti essētis
3.	audiantur	audirentur	audīti sint	audīti essent

PASSIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.				
	First Conjugation.	*Second Conjugation.*	*Third Conjugation.*	*Fourth Conjugation.*
Singular	ămāre	mŏnēre	rĕgĕre	audīre
Plural	ămāmini	mŏnēmini	rĕgĭmini	audīmini

INFINITIVE MOOD.				
Present	*to be loved* ămārī	*to be advised* mŏnērī	*to be ruled* rĕgi	*to be heard* audīrī
Perfect	*to have been loved* ămātus esse	*to have been advised* mŏnītus esse	*to have been ruled* rectus esse	*to have been heard* audītus esse
Future	*to be about to be loved* ămātum īrī	*to be about to be advised* mŏnītum īrī	*to be about to be ruled* rectum īrī	*to be about to be heard* audītum īrī

PARTICIPLE.				
Perfect	*having been loved* ămātus	*having been advised* mŏnītus	*having been ruled* rectus	*having been heard* audītus

GERUNDIVE.				
	meet to be loved amandus	*meet to be advised* monendus	*meet to be ruled* regendus	*meet to be heard* audiendus

		Possum.	Eo.	Fero.		Volo.	Nolo.	Malo.	Fio.
				Active.	*Passive.*				
		I am able.	*I go.*	*I bear.*	*I am borne.*	*I wish.*	*I do not wish.*	*I prefer.*	*I am made.*
Indicative.	Present	pos-sum pŏt-es pot-est pos-sŭmus pot-estis pos-sunt	eo Is It Imus Itis eunt	fĕro fers fert ferĭmus fertis ferunt	feror ferris fertur ferĭmur ferĭmĭni feruntur	vōlo vis vult volŭmus vultis volunt	nōlo nonvis nonvult nolŭmus nonvultis nolunt	mālo mavis mavult malŭmus mavultis malunt	fĭo fīs fĭt (fimus) (fitis) fiunt
	Future Simple	pŏt-ĕro* pot-eris	Ibo ibis	feram feres	ferar ferēris	vōlam volēs	(nolam) noles	(malam) males	fĭam fies
	Imperfect	pŏt-ĕram pot-eras	Ibam ibas	ferēbam ferebas	ferēbar ferēbāris	volēbam volēbas	nolēbam nolēbas	malēbam malēbas	fīēbam fiēbas
	Perfect	pŏt-ui pot-uisti	ii *or* ivi iisti	tŭli tulisti	latus sum „ es	volui voluisti	nolui noluisti	malui maluisti	factus sum factus es
Imperative		— —	S. I P. Ite	fer ferte	ferre ferimini	— —	S. nolī P. nolite	— —	(fī) (fite)
Subjunctive.	Present	pos-sim pos-sis	eam eas	feram feras	ferar ferāris	vēlim velis	nōlim nolis	mālim malis	fĭam fias
	Imperfect	pos-sem pos-ses	Irem ires	ferrem ferres	ferrer ferrēris	vellem velles	nollem nolles	mallem malles	fīĕrem fieres
	Perfect†	pŏtu-ĕrim potu-eris	ierim ieris	tŭlerim tuleris	latus sim „ sis	voluerim volueris	noluerim nolueris	maluerim malueris	factus sim factus sis
Infin.	Present	pos-se	Ire	ferre	ferri	velle	nolle	malle	fĭeri
	Perfect	potu-isse	Ivisse (isse)	tŭlisse	latus esse	volu-isse	noluisse	maluisse	factus esse
	Future	—	Iturus esse	laturus esse	latum iri	—	—	—	factum iri
Partic.	Present	—	Iens euntis	fĕrens	—	volens	nolens	—	—
	Perfect	—	—	—	lātus	—	—	—	factus
	Future	—	Iturus	laturus	—	—	—	—	—
Gerund		—	eundum	ferendum	—	volendum	nolendum	malendum	faciendum
Supine		—	Itum	lātum	—	—	—	—	—

* Like the Future of **sum**, 3rd plural **poterunt.**

† Future Perfect and Pluperfect formed regularly from Perfect Stem.

PREPOSITIONS.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING ACCUSATIVE CASE

Ad, *to, into, near, according to, at*, etc.:
e.g., **Ad urbem** ivit, *he went to the city.*
Ad portam stant, *they stand at* (or *near*) *the gate.*

Adversus, *against:*
e.g., Veni separáre hóminem **advérsus patrem** suum, *I came to set a man at variance against his father.*

Ante, *before:*
e.g., **Ante óstium** stant, *they stand before the gate.*
Ante tértiam **horam**, *before the third hour.*

Apud, *at, among, with, at the house of*, etc.:
e.g., **Apud eum**, *at his house.*
Verbum erat **apud Deum**, *the Word was with God.*

Circa *and* **Circum**, *about, around, at, concerning:*
e.g., **circa initium**, *at the beginning.*
circum me, *around me.*

Contra, *against, over against:*
e.g., Qui non est mecum, **contra me** est, *he that is not with me, is against me.*

Erga, *towards* (*of feelings*):
e.g., Benevoléntia amicórum **erga nos**, *the kindness of our friends towards us.*

Inter, *among, between, during*, etc.:
e.g., **Inter nos**, *among us.*
Inter coenam, *during supper.*

Juxta, *near, according to, close beside:*
e.g., Stabat Mater **juxta crucem**, *His Mother was standing beside the cross.*

Ob, *on account of:*
e.g., ob hoc **scelus**, *on account of this crime.*

Penes, *in the hands of:*
e.g., **Penes regem**, *in the hands of the king.*

Praeter, *besides, beyond, except:*
e.g., Omnes **praeter te**, *all except you.*
Praeter domum ivit, *he went past the house.*
Praeter spem, *beyond hope.*

Per, *through, by means of, by* (*in oaths*):
e.g., **Per** multas **noctes**, *through many nights.*
Per hanc **déxteram**, *by this right hand* (*I beseech you*).

Propter, *on account of, owing to, for:*
e.g., Grátias ágimus tibi **propter** magnam **glóriam** tuam, *we give thee thanks for thy great glory.*

Post, *after, behind:*
e.g., **Post haec**, *after this.*
Post me secútus est, *he followed behind me.*

Secúndum, *according to, after:*
e.g., **Secúndum verbum** tuum, *according to thy word.*

Secus, *along, beside:*
e.g., **Secus mare**, *beside the sea.*

Supra, *above, on, upon, beyond:*
e.g., Ámbulans **supra mare**, *walking on the sea.*
Benedíctus **supra omnes**, *blessed beyond all.*

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING ABLATIVE CASE.

A, ab, abs, *from, by :*
e.g., **Ab urbe** venit, *he came from the city.*
Laudátus **ab ómnibus,** *praised by all.*

Absque, *without :*
e.g., **Absque foédere,** *without fidelity.*

Coram, *in the presence of, before :*
e.g., **Coram rege,** *in the presence of the king.*

Clam, *secretly, without the knowledge of :*
e.g., **Clam me,** *without my knowledge.*

Cum, *with, together with* (*enclitic with* **me, te, se, nobis, vobis**)**:**
e.g., Venit **cum discípulis,** *he came with the disciples.*
Pax vobíscum, *Peace be with you.*

De, *from, down from, concerning, about, of :*
e.g., Descéndit **de coelis,** *He came down from heaven.*
De his rebus audívi, *I have heard of these things.*

E, ex, *out of, according to :*
e.g., **Ex urbe** ívit, *he went out of the city.*
Ex foédere, *in accordance with the treaty.*

Pro, *for, on behalf of, instead of, before :*
e.g., Ora **pro nobis,** *pray for us.*
Regnávit **pro patre,** *he reigned instead of his father.*
Pro castris, *before the camp.*

Prae, *for, because of, compared with, before :*
e.g., **Prae dolóre** non pótuit loqui, *he could not speak for grief.*
Benedícta tu es **prae** ómnibus **muliéribus,** *Blessed art thou before all women.*

Sine, *without.* **Sine mora,** *without delay.*

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING BOTH ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

In, (*a*) with Accusative, *into, for, in,* etc.:
e.g., **In urbem** venit, *he came into the city.*
In aetérnum, *for ever.*
In vicem, *in turn.*
(*b*) with Ablative, *in, on, at, before,* etc.:
e.g., **In urbe** est, *he is in the city.*
In tali témpore, *at such a time.*
In óculis ómnium est, *he is before everyone's eyes.*

Sub, (*a*) with Accusative, *under* (of motion *under*), *about, towards,* etc.:
e.g., **Sub terram** descéndit, *he went down under the earth.*
Sub noctem, *about night, towards night.*
(*b*) with Ablative, *under* (of rest *under*), *at the foot of, beneath.*
e.g., **Sub terrâ** hábitat, *he lives underground.*
Sub monte stetit, *he stood at the foot of the mountain.*

Super, (*a*) with Accusative, *over, above, beyond, upon,* etc.:
e.g., Non est discípulus **super magístrum,** *the disciple is not above the master.*
Super flúmina Babylónis illic sédimus et flévimus, *beside the rivers of Babylon there we sat and wept.*
(*b*) with Ablative, *concerning, about.*
e.g., **Super** hac **re,** *concerning this matter.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF IRREGULAR VERBS IN COMMON USE.

Present.	*Infinitive.*	*Perfect.*	*Supine.*	*Meaning.*
abeo	-īre	abii	abĭtum	*go away*
abscīndo	-ĕre	abscĭdi	abscissum	*rend*
abscondo	-ĕre	abscondi	absconditum	*hide*
absolvo	-ĕre	absolvi	absolūtum	*absolve*
abstineo	-ēre	abstinui	abstentum	*abstain*
accēdo	-ĕre	accessi	accessum	*approach*
accendo	-ĕre	accendi	accensum	*kindle*
accĭdo	-ĕre	accĭdi	—	*happen*
accingo	-ĕre	accinxi	accinctum	*gird*
accipio	-ĕre	accēpi	acceptum	*receive*
adeo	-īre	adii	adĭtum	*go to*
adjŭvo	-āre	adjūvi	adjūtum	*help*
advĕnio	-īre	advēni	adventum	*come*
affero	-re	attŭli	allātum	*bring to*
ago	-ĕre	ēgi	actum	*do, act, drive*
aperio	-ire	aperui	apertum	*open*
ardeo	-ēre	arsi	arsum	*burn (intr.)*
ascendo	-ĕre	ascendi	ascensum	*ascend*
assumo	-ĕre	assumpsi	assumptum	*assume*
audeo	-ēre	ausus sum	—	*dare*
aufero	-re	abstŭli	ablātum	*take away*
averto	-ĕre	averti	aversum	*turn away*
benedīco	-ĕre	benedixi	benedictum	*bless*
bibo	-ere	bibi	bibĭtum	*drink*
cădo	-ĕre	cĕcĭdi	cāsum	*fall*
caedo	-ĕre	cĕcĭdi	caesum	*strike*
căno	-ĕre	cĕcĭnī	cantum	*sing*
căpio	-ĕre	cēpi	captum	*take*
carpo	-ĕre	carpsi	carptum	*pluck*
căveo	-ēre	cāvi	cautum	*beware*
cēdo	-ĕre	cessi	cessum	*yield*
cerno	-ĕre	crēvi	crētum	*behold*
cingo	-ĕre	cinxi	cinctum	*gird*
claudo	-ĕre	clausi	clausum	*shut*
cognosco	-ĕre	cognōvi	cognĭtum	*know*
cōgo	-ĕre	coēgi	coactum	*compel*
colligo	-ĕre	collēgi	collectum	*collect*
cŏlo	-ĕre	cŏlui	cultum	*worship, till*
comĕdo	-ĕre	comēdi	comēsum	*eat*
compello	-ĕre	compŭli	compulsum	*compel*
complĕo	-ēre	complēvi	complētum	*accomplish*
comprehendo	-ĕre	comprehendi	comprehensum	*comprehend, seize*
compungo	-ĕre	compunxi	compunctum	*grieve for*
concipio	-ĕre	concēpi	conceptum	*conceive*

Present.	*Infinitive.*	*Perfect.*	*Supine.*	*Meaning.*
condo	-ĕre	condĭdi	condĭtum	*lay up, build*
confero	-re	contŭli	collātum	*bring together*
confĭdo	-ĕre	confīsus sum	—	*trust*
confĭteor	-ēri	confessus sum	—	*confess*
constĭtuo	-ĕre	constitui	constitūtum	*establish*
contemno	-ĕre	contempsi	contemptum	*despise*
contingo	-ere	contĭgi	contactum	*happen*
converto	-ĕre	converti	conversum	*convert*
crēdo	-ĕre	crēdĭdi	crēdĭtum	*believe*
cresco	-ĕre	crēvi	crētum	*increase, grow*
crucifīgo	-ĕre	crucifixi	crucifixum	*crucify*
cupio	-ĕre	cupīvi	cupītum	*desire*
curro	-ĕre	cucurri	cursum	*run*
dēcerno	-ĕre	dēcrēvi	dēcrētum	*decree*
dēdo	-ĕre	dēdĭdi	dēdĭtum	*give up*
dēfendo	-ĕre	dēfendi	dēfensum	*defend*
dēfĭcio	-ĕre	dēfēci	dēfectum	*fail*
dēleo	-ēre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	*blot out*
dēpōno	-ĕre	dēposui	dēpositum	*put down*
descendo	-ĕre	descendi	descensum	*descend*
dēsĕro	-ĕre	dēsĕrui	dēsertum	*desert*
dēspĭcio	-ĕre	dēspexi	dēspectum	*look down on*
dĭco	-ĕre	dixi	dictum	*say*
dīlĭgo	-ĕre	dīlexi	dīlectum	*love*
dīmitto	-ĕre	dīmīsi	dimissum	*send away*
dīrĭgo	-ĕre	dīrexi	dīrectum	*direct*
discēdo	-ĕre	discessi	discessum	*depart*
discerno	-ĕre	discrēvi	discrētum	*distinguish*
disco	-ĕre	dĭdĭci	—	*learn*
dīvĭdo	-ĕre	dīvīsi	dīvīsum	*divide*
do	dăre	dĕdi	dătum	*give*
dŏceo	-ēre	dŏcui	dŏctum	*teach*
dŏmo	-āre	dŏmui	dŏmitum	*subdue*
dūco	-ĕre	duxi	ductum	*lead*
ĕdo	-ĕre	ēdi	ēsum	*eat*
ējĭcio	-ĕre	ējēci	ējectum	*cast out*
ĕmo	-ĕre	ēmi	emptum	*buy*
eo	īre	īvi	ĭtum	*go*
ērĭgo	-ĕre	ērexi	ērectum	*lift*
ēvādo	-ĕre	ēvāsi	ēvāsum	*escape*
expello	-ĕre	expŭli	expulsum	*expel*
extendo	-ĕre	extendi	extensum	*stretch forth*
făcio	-ĕre	fēci	factum	*do, make*
fallo	-ĕre	fĕfelli	falsum	*deceive*
făteor	-ēri	fassus sum	—	*confess*
fĕro	ferre	tŭli	lātum	*bear*

Present.	*Infinitive.*	*Perfect.*	*Supine.*	*Meaning.*
fīdo	-ĕre	fīsus sum	—	*trust*
fīgo	-ĕre	fixi	fixum	*fix*
findo	-ĕre	fīdi	fissum	*cleave*
fingo	-ĕre	finxi	fictum	*form, feign*
fio	fiĕri	factus sum	—	*become*
flecto	-ĕre	flexi	flexum	*bend*
flĕo	-ēre	flēvi	flētum	*weep*
flŭo	-ĕre	fluxi	fluxum	*flow*
fŏdio	-ĕre	fōdi	fossum	*dig, pierce*
fŏveo	-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	*cherish*
frango	-ĕre	frēgi	fractum	*break*
fŭgio	-ĕre	fūgi	fūgītum	*flee*
fundo	-ĕre	fūdi	fūsum	*pour*
gaudeo	-ēre	gavīsus sum	—	*rejoice*
gĕmo	-ĕre	gĕmui	gemitum	*moan*
gĕro	-ĕre	gessi	gestum	*do, wage*
gigno	-ĕre	gĕnui	genitum	*give birth to*
gradior	-i	gressus sum	—	*walk*
haereo	-ēre	haesi	haesum	*stick*
haurio	-īre	hausi	haustum	*drain*
ignosco	-ĕre	ignōvi	ignōtum	*pardon*
implĕo	-ēre	implēvi	implētum	*fill*
imprimo	-ĕre	impressi	impressum	*impress*
indūco	-ĕre	induxi	inductum	*lead in*
indulgeo	-ēre	indulsi	indultum	*indulge, pardon*
indŭo	-ĕre	indŭi	indūtum	*clothe*
infero	-re	intŭli	illatum	*bring in*
infundo	-ĕre	infūdi	infūsum	*pour in*
insto	-āre	institi	—	*press on*
intellĭgo	-ĕre	intellexi	intellectum	*understand*
intendo	-ĕre	intendi	{intensum / intentum}	*incline*
intercēdo	-ĕre	intercessi	intercessum	*intercede*
interfĭcio	-ĕre	interfēci	interfectum	*kill*
introeo	-īre	introĭi	introĭtum	*enter*
invĕnio	-īre	invēni	inventum	*find*
involvo	-ĕre	involvi	invŏlūtum	*wrap up*
irascor	-i	irātus sum	—	*be angry*
jacio	-ĕre	jēci	jactum	*throw*
jŭbeo	-ēre	jussi	jussum	*command*
jungo	-ĕre	junxi	junctum	*join*
jŭvo	-āre	jūvi	jūtum	*help*
lābor	-i	lapsus sum	—	*slip*
lăvo	-āre	lāvi	{lotum / lautum}	*wash*

Present.	*Infinitive.*	*Perfect.*	*Supine.*	*Meaning.*
lĕgo	-ĕre	lēgi	lectum	*read, pick, choose*
lŏquor	-i	locutus sum	—	*speak*
lūdo	-ĕre	lūsi	lūsum	*play*
lūgeo	-ēre	luxi	luctum	*mourn*
mălĕdīco	-ĕre	mălĕdixi	mălĕdictum	*curse*
măneo	-ēre	mansi	mansum	*remain*
—	meminisse	memini	—	*remember*
mĕto	-ĕre	messui	messum	*reap*
mĕtuo	-ĕre	mĕtui	—	*fear*
misceo	-ēre	miscui	{mistum / mixtum}	*mix*
mĭsĕreor	-ēri	misertus sum	—	*pity*
mitto	-ĕre	mīsi	missum	*send*
mordeo	-ēre	mŏmordi	morsum	*bite*
mŏrior	-i	mortuus sum	—	*die*
mŏveo	-ēre	mōvi	mōtum	*move*
nascor	-i	nātus sum	—	*be born*
neglĕgo	-ĕre	neglexi	neglectum	*neglect*
nitor	-i	{nisus / nīxus} sum	—	*strive*
nosco	-ĕre	nōvi	nōtum	*know*
nūbo	-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	*marry*
obliviscor	-i	oblītus sum	—	*forget*
obrŭo	-ĕre	obrŭi	obrŭtum	*bury*
obtineo	-ēre	obtinui	obtentum	*obtain*
occīdo	-ĕre	occīdi	occīsum	*kill*
occĭdo	-ĕre	occĭdi	occāsum	*fall, die*
occŭlo	-ĕre	occŭlui	occultum	*hide*
occurro	-ĕre	occurri	occursum	*meet*
—	odisse	ōdi	—	*hate*
offendo	-ĕre	offendi	offensum	*strike*
offero	-re	obtuli	oblātum	*offer*
opprĭmo	-ĕre	oppressi	oppressum	*oppress*
ordior	-īrī	orsus sum	—	*begin*
orior	-īri	ortus sum	—	*rise*
ostendo	-ĕre	ostendi	ostensum	*show*
pando	-ĕre	pansi	{pansum / passum}	*spread*
pango	-ĕre	panxi	pactum	*compose*
parco	-ĕre	pĕperci	parsum	*spare*
părio	-ĕre	pepĕri	partum	*bring forth*
pasco	-ĕre	pāvi	pastum	*feed*
patior	-i	passus sum	—	*suffer*
păveo	-ēre	pāvi	—	*fear, quake*
pello	-ĕre	pĕpŭli	pulsum	*drive*

Present.	*Infinitive.*	*Perfect.*	*Supine.*	*Meaning.*
pendeo	-ēre	pĕpendi	—	*hang (intr.)*
pendo	-ĕre	pependi	pensum	*weigh*
percŭtio	-ĕre	percussi	percussum	*strike*
perdo	-ĕre	perdĭdi	perdĭtum	*lose, destroy*
pereo	-īre	perĭi	perĭtum	*perish*
perfĭcio	-ĕre	perfēci	perfectum	*finish*
pergo	-ĕre	perrexi	perrectum	*proceed*
permitto	-ĕre	permīsi	permissum	*permit*
persequor	-i	persecūtus sum	—	*persecute*
pĕto	-ĕre	petīvi	petītum	*seek*
pingo	-ĕre	pinxi	pictum	*paint*
plango	-ĕre	planxi	planctum	*lament, beat*
plaudo	-ĕre	plausi	plausum	*applaud*
pōno	-ĕre	pŏsui	pŏsĭtum	*place*
posco	-ĕre	pŏposci	—	*demand*
possĭdeo	-ēre	possēdi	possessum	*possess*
pōto	-āre	pōtāvi	{pōtum / pōtātum}	*drink*
praesto	-āre	praestĭti	praestĭtum	*give, excel*
prĕmo	-ĕre	pressi	pressum	*press*
prōcēdo	-ĕre	prōcessi	prōcessum	*proceed*
prōcĭdo	-ĕre	procĭdi	—	*fall down*
prōdo	-ĕre	prōdĭdi	prōdĭtum	*betray*
prōfĭcisor	-i	prŏfectus sum	—	*set out*
prōgredior	-i	prōgressus sum	—	*advance*
prōmitto	-ĕre	prōmīsi	prōmissum	*promise*
prōmo	-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	*bring out*
prōtĕgo	-ĕre	prōtexi	prōtectum	*protect*
quaero	-ĕre	quaesīvi	quaesītum	*seek*
quătio	-ĕre	quassi	quassum	*shake*
queo	quīre	quīvi	quītum	*be able*
quiesco	-ĕre	quiēvi	quiētum	*rest*
răpio	-ĕre	răpui	raptum	*seize*
rĕcumbo	-ĕre	rĕcŭbui	—	*recline*
reddo	-ĕre	reddĭdi	reddĭtum	*give back*
rĕdĭmo	-ĕre	rĕdēmi	redemptum	*redeem*
rĕgo	-ĕre	rexi	rectum	*rule*
rĕlinquo	-ĕre	rĕlīqui	rĕlictum	*leave*
rĕmitto	-ĕre	rĕmīsi	rĕmissum	*remit*
rēpo	-ĕre	repsi	reptum	*creep*
rĕquĭesco	-ĕre	rĕquiēvi	requiētum	*rest*
rĕsisto	-ĕre	restĭti	—	*resist*
respondeo	-ēre	respondi	responsum	*answer*
restĭtŭo	-ĕre	restĭtui	restitūtum	*restore*
rĕsurgo	-ĕre	rĕsurrexi	resurrectum	*rise again*
rĕvolvo	-ĕre	rĕvolvi	rĕvolūtum	*roll back*
rīdeo	-ēre	rīsi	rīsum	*laugh*

Present.	*Infinitive.*	*Perfect.*	*Supine.*	*Meaning.*
rumpo	-ĕre	rūpi	ruptum	*break*
rŭo	-ĕre	rŭi	ruĭtum / rūtum	*rush*
scando	-ĕre	scandi	scansum	*climb*
scindo	-ĕre	scĭdi	scissum	*cut, tear*
scrībo	-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	*write*
sĕco	-āre	sĕcui	sectum	*cut*
sĕdeo	-ēre	sēdi	sessum	*sit*
sentio	-īre	sensi	sensum	*feel*
sĕpĕlio	-īre	sĕpĕlīvi	sĕpultum	*bury*
sĕquor	-i	secūtus sum	—	*follow*
sĕro	-ĕre	sĕrui	sertum	*join*
sĕro	-ĕre	sēvi	sătum	*sow*
sīno	-ĕre	sīvi	sītum	*allow*
sŏleo	-ēre	sŏlĭtus sum	—	*be wont*
solvo	-ĕre	solvi	sŏlūtum	*loose*
spargo	-ĕre	sparsi	sparsum	*scatter, sprinkle*
sperno	-ĕre	sprēvi	sprētum	*despise*
spondeo	-ēre	spŏpondi	sponsum	*promise*
stătŭo	-ĕre	stătui	stătūtum	*set up*
sterno	-ĕre	strāvi	strātum	*strew*
sto	-āre	stĕti	stătum	*stand*
stringo	-ĕre	strinxi	strictum	*bind*
subvĕnio	-īre	subvēni	subventum	*come to help*
succendo	-ĕre	succendi	succensum	*kindle*
succurro	-ĕre	succurri	succursum	*succour*
suffero	-re	sustŭli	sublātum	*suffer*
sūmo	-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	*take*
surgo	-ĕre	surrexi	surrectum	*rise*
suscĭpio	-ĕre	suscēpi	susceptum	*undertake*
suspĭcio	-ĕre	suspexi	suspectum	*look up to*
tango	-ĕre	tĕtĭgi	tactum	*touch*
tego	-ĕre	texi	tectum	*cover*
tendo	-ĕre	tetendi	tentum / tensum	*stretch*
teneo	-ēre	tenui	tentum	*hold*
tero	-ĕre	trīvi	trītum	*rub*
texo	-ĕre	texui	textum	*weave*
tollo	-ĕre	sustŭli	sublātum	*take away*
tondeo	-ēre	tŏtondi	tonsum	*shave*
tŏno	-āre	tŏnui	tŏnītum	*thunder*
torqueo	-ēre	torsi	tortum	*twist*
torreo	-ēre	torrui	tostum	*roast*
trādo	-ĕre	trādĭdi	trādĭtum	*betray*
trăho	-ĕre	traxi	tractum	*draw*
transfigo	-ĕre	transfixi	transfixum	*pierce*

Present.	*Infinitive.*	*Perfect.*	*Supine.*	*Meaning.*
trĕmo	-ĕre	tremui	—	*tremble*
trĭbuo	-ĕre	trĭbui	trĭbūtum	*bestow*
unguo	-ĕre	unxi	unctum	*anoint*
urgeo	-ēre	ursi	—	*urge*
ūro	-ĕre	ussi	ustum	*burn*
ūtor	-i	ūsus sum	—	*use*
vādo	-ĕre	vāsi	—	*go*
vĕho	-ĕre	vexi	vectum	*carry*
vello	-ĕre	velli / vulsi	vulsum	*pluck*
vendo	-ĕre	vendĭdi	vendĭtum	*sell*
venio	-īre	vēni	ventum	*come*
verto	-ĕre	verti	versum	*turn*
vĕto	-āre	vĕtui	vĕtĭtum	*forbid*
vīdeo	-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	*see*
vincio	-īre	vinxi	vinctum	*bind*
vinco	-ĕre	vīci	victum	*conquer*
vivo	-ĕre	vixi	victum	*live*

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX

I.

USE OF CASES.

1. **The Nominative Case**—subject of sentence:
   e.g., **Discípuli** fugérunt, *the disciples fled.*
2. **The Vocative Case**—case of person addressed:
   e.g., Miserére nobis, **Dómine**, *have mercy on us, O Lord.*
3. **The Accusative Case.**
   (i.) Object of sentence:
   e.g., **Regem** vidérunt, *they saw the king.*
   (ii.) Duration of time:
   e.g., **Tres dies** manebámus, *we remained three days.*
   (iii.) Extent of space:
   e.g., **Tria míllia** pássuum progréssi sunt, *they advanced three miles.*
   (iv.) Goal (usually with preposition):
   Ad urbem venérunt, *they came to the city.*
   (v.) Double accusative (after verbs of asking, teaching, concealing):
   e.g., **Eos panem** rogávi, *I asked them for bread.*
4. **The Genitive Case.**
   (i.) Possessive:
   e.g., Num custos **fratris mei** ego sum ? *Am I my brother's keeper ?*
   (ii.) Partitive:
   e.g., Quot **vestrum** vénient ? *How many of you will come ?*
   (iii.) Objective:
   e.g., Miserére **mei**, *have mercy on me.*
   (iv.) Descriptive:
   e.g., Quid tímidi estis, **módicae fídei** ? *Why are ye fearful, O ye of little faith ?*
5. **The Dative Case.**
   (i.) Indirect Object:
   e.g., Hoc **mihi** dedit, *he gave this to me.*

(ii.) Possessive:
e.g., Liber est **mihi,** *I have a book* (*lit. there is a book to me*).
(iii.) Predicative:
e.g., Éritis **ódio** ómnibus géntibus, *you shall be hated by all nations* (*lit. you shall be for a hatred to all nations*).
(iv.) After many verbs in Latin (*e.g.*, **credo, ímpero, parco, páreo, suádeo, sérvio,** etc.):
e.g., **Tibi** crēdo, *I believe you.*

6. **The Ablative Case.**
(i.) Instrumental:
e.g., Rex **gládio** occísus est, *the king was slain by a sword.*
(ii.) Agent (with **ab**):
e.g., Rex **a mílite** occísus est, *the king was slain by a soldier.*
(iii.) Separation (often with a preposition):
e.g., Líbera nos **a malo,** *deliver us from evil.*
(iv.) Manner (usually with **cum**):
e.g., Suscepérunt verbum **cum omni aviditáte,** *they received the word with all eagerness.*
(v.) Cause:
e.g., **Morbo** mórtuus est, *he died of disease.*
(vi.) Price:
e.g., Hoc emi **denário,** *I bought this for penny.*
(vii.) Time:
e.g., **Tértiâ vigiliâ** venit, *he came at the third watch.*
(viii.) Measure of difference:
e.g., Ille **multo** sapiéntior est, *he is far wiser.*
(ix.) Comparison:
e.g., **Templo** major est hic: *there is here a greater than the temple.*
(x.) Locative (usually with a preposition):
In urbe est, *he is in the city.*
(xi.) Description:
e.g., Beáti **mundo corde**, *Blessed are the clean of heart.*
(xii.) After certain adjectives (*e.g.*, **dignus, indígnus, plenus, conténtus,** etc.):
e.g., Plena **gratiâ,** *full of grace.*

(xiii.) After certain verbs (*e.g.*, **fruor, fungor, pótior, utor, vescor,** etc.):
e.g., **Hōc stilo** utor, *I am using this pen.*
(xiv.) Ablative Absolute:
e.g., **Hoc audíto,** abierunt, *hearing this, they went away.*

II.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

The **Present, Future, Future-Perfect,** and **Perfect** (with *have*) Tenses of the Indicative Mood are called **primary** Tenses, and must be followed by corresponding (primary) tenses of the Subjunctive in a subordinate clause, if the Subjunctive Mood is required. The primary tenses of the Subjunctive are the **Present** and **Perfect.**

e.g., **Venio** ut te **videam**, *I am coming to see you.*
Rogabit quid **fecerim**, *he will ask what I have done.*

The **Imperfect, Pluperfect,** and **Perfect** (without *have*) Tenses of the Indicative are **secondary** tenses, and must be followed by secondary (**Imperfect** or **Pluperfect**) tenses of the Subjunctive.

e.g., **Veni** ut te **vidérem**, *I came to see you.*
Rogávit quid **fecíssem**, *he asked what I had done.*

This rule of sequence of tenses is, however, often violated in Ecclesiastical Latin.

III.

CLAUSES.

1. Noun Clauses.

(i.) **Indirect Statement.**
(1) Accusative and Infinitive Construction:
e.g., Dicit **regem mórtuum esse**, *he says that the king is dead.*
(2) **quod, quia,** or **quóniam** with Indicative:
e.g., Confíteor **quia peccávi**, *I confess that I have sinned.*
(3) **quod, quia,** or **quóniam** with Subjunctive:
e.g., Scimus **quóniam** hoc verum **sit**, *we know that this is true.*
N.B.—(2) and (3) are not found in Classical Latin.

(ii.) **Indirect Command.**

(1) Infinitive Construction:*
e.g., Jussit eum **abíre**, *he ordered him to depart.*

(2) An **ut**† clause followed by Subjunctive.
e.g., Orávit eum **ut veníret**, *he prayed him to come.*

(3) A clause in the Subjunctive without **ut** :
e.g., Vos obsécro **audiátis** me, *I beg you to hear me.*

(iii.) **Indirect Question.**

(1) An Interrogative word followed by Subjunctive:
e.g., Eum rogávi **quid fáceret**, *I asked him what he was doing.*

(2) An Interrogative word followed by the Indicative:
e.g., Dómine, nescímus **quo vadis**, *Lord, we know not whither thou goest.*

N.B.—(2) is not found in Classical Latin.

2. Adjectival Clauses.

(1) A Relative Pronoun followed by Indicative:
e.g., Hic est **qui** regem **occídit**, *this is the man who slew the king.*

(2) A Relative Pronoun followed by Subjunctive.
(*a*) to express purpose:
e.g., Hómines misit **qui** hoc **fácerent**, *he sent men to do this.*
(*b*) to express result:
e.g., Pater tales quaerit **qui adórent** eum, *the Father seeketh such to adore him.*
(*c*) after **dignus** and **indignus** :
e.g., **Dignus** est **qui** hoc **fáciat**, *he is worthy to do this.*

3. Adverbial Clauses.

(i.) **Temporal Clauses.**

(1) A temporal Conjunction (*e.g.*, **dum, quando, ut, postquam,** etc.), followed by Indicative:
e.g., **Dum spiro,** spero, *while I breathe I hope;* Venit nox, **quando** nemo **potest** operári, *the night cometh when no man can work.*

(2) A temporal Conjunction (*e.g.*, **cum, donec,** etc.) followed by the Subjunctive:
e.g., **Cum** hoc **fecíssent,** abiérunt, *when they had done this they departed.*

* In Classical Latin this is limited to the verbs **júbeo** and **veto.**
† A negative clause is introduced by **ne.**

(ii.) **Final Clauses**—expressing purpose.

(1) An **ut** clause with Subjunctive:

e.g., Jesus ductus est in desértum **ut tentarétur**, *Jesus was led into the desert to be tempted.*

(2) An **ut** clause with **non** (if negative) with Subjunctive:

e.g., Nolíte judicáre **ut non judicémini**, *judge not, that you may not be judged.*

(3) A **ne** clause (if negative) with Subjunctive:

e.g., In mánibus tollent te, **ne** forte **offéndas** ad lápidem pedem tuum, *in their hands shall they bear thee up, lest perhaps thou dash thy foot against a stone.*

(4) A Relative clause with Subjunctive:

e.g., Hómines adsunt **qui** respónsum **dent,** *the men are here to give an answer.*

(5) An Infinitive clause:

e.g., Ventúrus est **judicáre** vivos et mortuos, *He shall come to judge both the living and the dead.*

N.B.—(2) and (5) are not found in Classical Latin.

(iii.) **Consecutive Clauses**—expressing result.

(1) **ut** (or **ut non** if negative) with Subjunctive:

e.g., Flumen tam altum est **ut non possímus** transíre, *the river is so deep that we cannot cross it.*

(2) A Relative with Subjunctive:

e.g., Pater tales quaerit **qui adórent** eum, *the Father seeketh such to adore him.*

(iv.) **Causal Clauses.**

(1) A clause introduced by **quia, quóniam, quod,** with Indicative:

e.g., Exi a me, **quia** homo peccátor **sum**, Dómine, *Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, O Lord.*

(2) A clause introduced by cum (*=since*) with Subjunctive:

e.g., Hi hómines contúrbant civitátem nostram, **cum sint** Judaéi, *these men disturb our city being* (*i.e., because they are*) *Jews.*

(3) A clause introduced by **quia, quóniam,** or **quod,** with Subjunctive, to imply suggested reason:

e.g., Eum occídit **quod** próditor **esset**, *he put him to death on the ground that he was a traitor.*

N.B.—In Ecclesiastical Latin the Subjunctive often follows **quia, quóniam,** and **quod** to express actual cause.

(v.) **Concessive Clauses.**

A Clause introduced by **cum, quamvis, etsi, quamquam,*** etc. (meaning *although*), with Subjunctive:

e.g., Et non invenérunt, **cum** multi falsi testes **accessíssent,** *and they found not, although many false witnesses had come in.*

(vi.) **Conditional Clauses.**

(1) Open conditions, in present or past time, implying nothing as regards fulfilment or non-fulfilment —Indicative in both clauses:

e.g., **Si** hoc **facis, peccas,** *if you are doing this, you are doing wrong;* **Si** hoc **fecísti, peccavísti,** *if you did this, you did wrong.*

(2) Unfulfilled Conditions.

(*a*) In present time, Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses:

e.g., **Si adésset,** ei **créderem,** *if he were here, I would believe him.*

(*b*) In past time, Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses: *e.g.*, **Si adfuíssem,** hoc tibi **dedíssem,** *if I had been there, I would have given you this.*

(*c*) Past time in protasis (*if* clause), present in apodosis (principal clause); Pluperfect Subjunctive in protasis, Imperfect Subjunctive in apodosis:

e.g., **Si** hoc **fecísses,** non in cárcere nunc **esses,** *if you had done this, you would not now be in prison.*

(3) Future Conditions.

(*a*) Probable—Future or Future-Perfect Indicative in protasis, Future Indicative (or Imperative) in apodosis:

e.g., **Si** in urbem **vénero,** hoc **emam,** *if I come to town, I will buy this.*

(*b*) Possible but Improbable—Present Subjunctive in both clauses:

e.g., Si hoc **fácias, pecces,** *if you were to do this, you would do wrong.*

* In Classical Latin **quamquam** is followed by the Indicative.

IV.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The Ablative Absolute consists of a noun and participle, a pronoun and participle, or a noun or pronoun and adjective, together in the Ablative case, forming a phrase roughly answering to the Nominative Absolute in English:

e.g., Her father being dead, she had to leave home.

This in Latin would be **patre mórtuo,** domo abíre eam opórtuit.

The Ablative Absolute is a very common construction in Latin owing to the absence of the past participle active. It is impossible to say in Latin, *having done this he went home ;* the sentence must be turned passively, *this having been done, he went home,* and the Ablative Absolute construction used: **Hoc facto,** domum ivit.

The Ablative Absolute may represent the following kinds of clauses:—

(i.) Temporal:
e.g., **His dictis,** ábiit, *when he had said this, he departed.*

(ii.) Causal:
e.g., **Fratre mórtuo,** domum rédiit, *because his brother was dead, he returned home.*

(iii.) Concessive:
e.g., **Ómnibus audiéntibus** nemo locútus est, *though all were listening, no one spoke.*

V.

QUESTIONS.

Questions are asked in Latin—

(i.) By an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb:
e.g., **Quid** facis ? *What are you doing ?*

(ii.) By a mark of interrogation at the end of the sentence:*
e.g., Tu es rex Judaeórum ? *Art thou the king of the Jews ?*

(iii.) By **nonne** (or **an**) if an affirmative answer is expected:
e.g., **Nonne** hoc verum est ? *Surely this is true ?*

(iv.) By **num** (or **numquid**) if a negative answer is expected:
e.g., **Num** custos fratris mei ego sum ? *Am I my brother's keeper ?*

* In Classical Latin the particle **-ne** is suffixed to the first word in the sentence—*e.g.,* **Tune es rex Judaeórum ?**

VI.

TIME.

Time is expressed in Latin—

(i.) By the Accusative to denote "how long":
e.g., **Tres horas** ibi manébat, *he remained there three hours.*

(ii.) By the Ablative to denote:
(*a*) Point of time (time "when"):
e.g., **Tértiâ horâ** proféctus est, *he set out at the third hour.*
(*b*) Time "within which":
e.g., Quinque **diébus** redíbit, *he will return within five days.*

N.B.—In Ecclesiastical Latin the Ablative is often used for time "how long":
e.g., Cum jejunásset quadragínta **diébus** et quadragínta **noctibus**, postea esúriit, *when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, afterwards he was hungry.*

VII.

WISHES.

(i.) Wishes for the future are expressed by the Present Subjunctive (negative **ne**):
e.g., Cito **véniat!** *May he come quickly!* **Ne péreas!** *May you not perish!*

(ii.) Wishes for the present are expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive with **útinam** (=*would that*) (negative **ne**):
e.g., **Útinam adésset!** *Would that he were here!*

(iii.) Wishes for the past are expressed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive with **útinam** (negative **ne**):
Útinam ne hoc **fecíssem!** *Would that I had not done this!*

VIII.

PROHIBITIONS.

Prohibitions are expressed by—

(i.) **Noli** with the Infinitive:
e.g., **Noli** hoc **fácere,** *do not do this* (*lit. be unwilling to do this*).

(ii.) **Ne** with the Perfect Subjunctive:
e.g., **Ne** hoc **féceris,** *do not do this.*

(iii.) **Ne** with the Present Subjunctive:
e.g., **Ne occídas,** *do not kill.*

N.B.—In Ecclesiastical Latin **non** is used as well as **ne** :
e.g., **Non miréris,** *wonder not.*

IX.

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

The **Gerund** is a Verbal noun ending in **-ndum** (2nd Declension neuter), and is Active in Voice.

The **Gerundive** is a Verbal Adjective ending in **-ndus, -a, -um,** and is Passive in Voice. Only transitive verbs have a Gerundive.

The Gerund or Gerundive used with the verb *to be* expresses obligation. The person on whom the obligation falls is put in the Dative case (*Dative of Agent*):

e.g., **Nobis redeúndum est,** *we must return* (Gerund).
Inimíci **nobis amándi sunt,** *we must love our enemies* (Gerundive) (*lit. our enemies must be loved by us*).

The Gerund is used as a verbal noun in the oblique cases:

e.g., Cupído **discéndi,** *the desire of learning.*
Legéndo studet, *he is devoted to reading.*
Docéndo díscimus, *we learn by teaching.*

If the verb is followed by a direct object, the Gerundive is used instead of the Gerund, the noun being used in the case required, and the Gerundive agreeing with it in number, gender, and case:

e.g., Cupído **legéndae epístolae,** *the desire of reading the letter.*
Legéndis libris studet, *he is devoted to reading books.*
Docéndo discípulo ipsi díscimus, *by teaching a pupil we learn ourselves.*

The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive after the preposition **ad,** or the Genitive after **causâ,** expresses purpose:

e.g., Progréssi sunt **ad oppugnándum,** *they advanced to attack* (Gerund).
Progréssi sunt **ad urbem oppugnándam,** *they advanced to attack the city* (Gerundive).
Hoc dixit **causâ nobis suadéndi,*** *he said this to persuade us* (Gerund).
Hoc dixit **causâ mei juvándi,** *he said this to help me* (Gerundive).

X.

THE SUPINES.

The Supines are rarely used in Latin. The Supine in **-um** is used to express purpose after a verb of motion:

e.g., **Exi lusum,** *go out to play.*

The Supine in **-u** is used after an adjective where English uses an Infinitive:

e.g., **Mirábile dictu,** *wonderful to relate.*

* Verbs that govern the Dative are intransitive in Latin, and therefore have no Gerundive.

FAMILIAR LATIN PRAYERS AND HYMNS.

(The English of all words used in the following passages will be found in the Vocabulary at the end of the book.)

Pater Noster.

Pater noster, qui es in coelis, sanctificétur nomen tuum; advéniat regnum tuum; fiat volúntas tua, sicut in coelo, et in terrâ. Panem nostrum quotidiánum da nobis hódie. Et dimítte nobis débita nostra, sicut et nos dimíttimus debitóribus nostris. Et ne nos indúcas in tentatiónem: sed líbera nos a malo.

Ave María.

Ave María, grátiâ plena; Dóminus tecum; benedícta tu in muliéribus, et benedíctus fructus ventris tui, Jesus. Sancta María, Mater Dei, ora pro nobis peccatóribus, nunc et in horâ mortis nostrae.

Apostles' Creed.

Credo in Deum, Patrem omnipoténtem, Creatórem coeli et terrae. Et in Jesum Christum, Fílium ejus únicum, Dóminum nostrum; qui concéptus est de Spíritu Sancto, natus ex Maríâ Vírgine, passus sub Póntio Piláto, crucifíxus, mórtuus, et sepúltus; descéndit ad ínferos; tértiâ die resurréxit a mórtuis; ascéndit ad coelos; sedet ad déxteram Dei Patris omnipoténtis; inde ventúrus est judicáre vivos et mórtuos. Credo in Spíritum Sanctum, sanctam Ecclésiam Cathólicam, Sanctórum communiónem, remissiónem peccatórum, carnis resurrectiónem, vitam aeternam.

Glória.

Glória Patri, et Fílio, et Spíritui Sancto. Sicut erat in princípio, et nunc, et semper, et in saécula saeculórum.

Nicene Creed.

Credo in unum Deum, Patrem omnipoténtem, Factórem coeli et terrae, visibílium ómnium et invisibílium. Et in unum Dóminum Jesum Christum, Fílium Dei unigénitum, et ex Patre natum ante ómnia saécula. Deum de Deo, Lumen de Lúmine; Deum

verum de Deo vero; génitum non factum; consubstantiálem Patri, per quem ómnia facta sunt. Qui propter nos hómines et propter nostram salútem, descéndit de coelis. Et incarnátus est de Spíritu Sancto, ex Maríâ Vírgine; et Homo factus est. Crucifíxus étiam pro nobis, sub Póntio Piláto passus et sepúltus est. Et resurréxit tértiâ die secúndum Scriptúras; et ascéndit in coelum, sedet ad déxteram Patris: et íterum ventúrus est cum gloriâ judicáre vivos et mórtuos: cujus regni non erit finis. Et in Spíritum Sanctum Dóminum et vivificántem, qui ex Patre Fílioque procédit: qui cum Patre et Fílio simul adorátur et conglorificátur; qui locútus est per Prophétas. Et unam sanctam Cathólicam et Apostólicam Ecclésiam. Confíteor unum baptísma in remissiónem peccatórum. Et expécto resurrectiónem mortuórum, et vitam ventúri saéculi.

Glória in Excélsis Deo.

Glória in excélsis Deo; et in terrâ pax homínibus bonae voluntátis. Laudámus te; benedícimus te; adorámus te; glorificámus te. Grátias ágimus tibi propter magnam glóriam tuam, Dómine Deus, Rex coeléstis, Deus Pater omnipótens. Dómine Fili unigénite Jesu Christe; Dómine Deus, Agnus Dei, Fílius Patris. Qui tollis peccáta mundi, miserére nobis. Qui tollis peccáta mundi, súscipe deprecatiónem nostram. Qui sedes ad déxteram Patris, miserére nobis. Quóniam tu solus sanctus, Tu solus Dóminus, Tu solus altíssimus, Jesu Christe. Cum Sancto Spíritu, in gloriâ Dei Patris.

The Angelus.

V. Angelus Dómini nuntiávit Maríae.
R. Et concépit de Spíritu Sancto.
Ave María, grátiâ plena, etc.
V. Ecce ancílla Dómini.
R. Fiat mihi secúndum verbum tuum.
Ave María.
V. Et verbum caro factum est.
R. Et habitávit in nobis.
Ave María.

Grátiam tuam quaésumus, Dómine, méntibus nostris infúnde, ut qui, ángelo nuntiánte, Christi Fílii tui Incarnatiónem cognóvimus, per Passiónem ejus et crucem ad Resurrectiónis glóriam perducámur. Per eúndem Christum Dóminum nostrum.

Memoráre.

Memoráre, O píssima Virgo María, non esse audítum a saéculo, quemquam ad tua curréntem praesídia, tua implorántem auxília, tua peténtem suffrágia, esse derelíctum. Ego, tali animátus confidentiâ, ad te, Virgo Vírginum Mater, curro; ad te vénio; coram te gemens peccátor assísto. Noli, Mater Verbi, verba mea despícere, sed audi propítia et exaudi.

Salve Regína.

Salve Regína, mater misericórdiae; vita, dulcédo et spes nostra, salve. Ad te clamámus, éxules fílii Hévae, ad te suspirámus, geméntes et flentes in hâc lacrymárum valle.

Eia ergo, Advocáta nostra, illos tuos misericórdes óculos ad nos convérte; et Jesum, benedíctum fructum ventris tui, nobis post hoc exílium osténde. O clemens, O pia, O dulcis Virgo María.

V. Ora pro nobis, sancta Dei Génitrix.

R. Ut digni efficiámur promissiónibus Christi.

Regína Coeli.

Regína coeli laetáre, Allelúia.
Quia quem meruísti portáre, Allelúia.
Resurréxit sicut dixit, Allelúia.
Ora pro nobis Deum, Allelúia.

Ave Verum.

Ave verum Corpus natum
Ex Maríâ Vírgine,
Vere passum, immolátum
In cruce pro hómine.

Cujus latus perforátum
Vero fluxit sánguine,
Esto nobis praegustátum
Mortis in exámine.

O clemens, o pie,
O dulcis Jesu, Fili Maríae!

O Salutáris.

O Salutáris Hóstia,
Quae coeli pandis óstium:
Bella premunt hostília,
Da robur, fer auxílium.

Uni trinóque Dómino
Sit sempitérna glória,
Qui vitam sine término
Nobis donet in pátriâ.

Tantum Ergo.

Tantum ergo Sacraméntum
Venerémur cernui:
Et antíquum documéntum
Novo cedat rítui;
Praestet fides suppleméntum
Sénsuum defectui.

Genitóri Genitóque
Laus et jubilátio,
Salus, honor, virtus quoque,
Sit et benedíctio:
Procedénti ab utróque
Compar sit laudátio.

De Profúndis.

1. De profúndis clamávi ad te, Dómine: Dómine exaúdi vocem meam.
2. Fiant aures tuae intendéntes, in vocem deprecatiónis meae.
3. Si iniquitátes observáveris, Dómine: Dómine, quis sustinébit?
4. Quia apud te propitiátio est: et propter legem tuam sustínui te, Dómine.
5. Sustínuit ánima mea in verbo ejus: sperávit ánima mea in Dómino.
6. A custódiâ matutínâ usque ad noctem: speret Ísraël in Dómino.
7. Quia apud Dóminum misericórdia: et copiósa apud eum redémptio.
8. Et ipse rédimet Ísraël, ex ómnibus iniquitátibus ejus.

Litany of Loreto.

KÝRIE eléison.
Kýrie eléison.
Christe eléison.
Christe eléison.
Kýrie eléison.
Kýrie eléison.
Christe audi nos.
Christe exaúdi nos.
Pater de coelis Deus, *miserére nobis.*
Fili Redémptor mundi Deus, *miserére nobis.*
Spíritus Sancte Deus, *miserére nobis.*

Sancta Trínitas, unus Deus, *miserére nobis.*
Sancta María, *ora pro nobis.*
Sancta Dei Génitrix,
Sancta Virgo Vírginum,
Mater Christi,
Mater divínae grátiae,
Mater purísima,
Mater castíssima,
Mater invioláta,
Mater intemeráta,
Mater amábilis,
Mater admirábilis,
Mater boni consílii,

Mater Creatóris,
Mater Salvatóris,
Virgo prudentíssima,
Virgo veneránda,
Virgo praedicánda,
Virgo potens,
Virgo clemens,
Virgo fidélis,
Spéculum justítiae,
Sedes sapiéntiae,
Causa nostrae laetítiae,
Vas spirituále,
Vas honorábile,
Vas insígne devotiónis,
Rosa mýstica,
Turris Davídica,
Turris ebúrnea,
Domus aúrea,
Foéderis arca,
Jánua coeli,
Stella matutína,
Salus infirmórum,
Refúgium peccatórum,
Consolátrix afflictórum,
Auxílium Christianórum,
Regína angelórum,
Regína patriarchárum,
Regína prophetárum,
Regína apostolórum,
Regína mártyrum,
Regína confessórum,
Regína vírginum,
Regína sanctórum ómnium,
Regína sine labe originàli concépta.
Regína sacratíssimi Rosárii,
Regína pacis,

Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, *parce nobis, Dómine.*

Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, *exaúdi nos, Dómine.*

Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, *miserére nobis.*

THE MEANINGS AND DERIVATIONS OF FAMILIAR CATHOLIC TERMS.

ASPERGES, from the Latin **aspérgo,** *I sprinkle:* the ceremony of sprinkling the altar, clergy, and congregation with Holy Water at the beginning of High Mass, so called from the first word of the antiphon with which the ceremony begins: **"Aspérges me, Dómine, hyssópo, et mundábor,"** "*Thou shalt sprinkle me with hyssop and I shall be cleansed*" (Psalm L, 9).

CARDINAL, from the Latin **cardo, cárdinis,** *a hinge:* hence the point on which anything turns. The original Hebrew word used for the Princes of the Philistines also means *an axle* or *hinge.** The term *cardinal* was first used in Christian times to mean the permanent clergy of any church—*i.e.*, those priests who were so indispensable to the work of the church that everything seemed to revolve round them, just as a door turns on its hinge.

CENACLE, from the Latin **cenáculum,** which literally meant *an eating-room;* then, as this was usually in the upper part of the house, it was used to mean an upper room, or even a garret or attic. The word is now used for the upper chamber at Jerusalem where Our Lord partook of the Last Supper with the Apostles.

CHASUBLE, from the Latin **cásula,** a diminutive of **casa,** *a hut:* the chief vestment worn by the celebrant at Mass.

CIBORIUM, from the Latin **cibórium** (Greek, *κιβώριον*), which literally meant the seed-pod of the Egyptian bean, but which was also used for a drinking vessel resembling the bean in shape. In England the term *Ciborium* is applied to the vessel in which the Blessed Sacrament is kept.

CONFIRMATION, from the Latin **confírmo,** *I strengthen,* hence the name given to the Sacrament which confers strengthening grace.

FERIA. The Latin word **fériae,** *holidays,* meant days on which the ancient Romans abstained from political and legislative work, and gave their slaves a holiday. Such days were those consecrated to any deity. Later, the **fériae** were kept for the observance of Christian feasts. To-day the term **féria** denotes the days of

* *Cf.* Josh. xiii, 3; Judg. iii, 3.

the week from Monday to Friday inclusive; this use of the word probably comes from the custom in the early Church of calling the Monday in Easter week the second feast-day, or **féria secúnda,** the Tuesday the third feast-day, or **féria tértia,** and so on; the practice was then adopted for all the days of the year except Saturdays and Sundays.

GENUFLECT, from the Latin **genu,** *a knee,* and **flecto,** *I bend;* literally, therefore, to genuflect means to bend the knee, though for a correct genuflection the knee should touch the ground.

INDULGENCE, from the Latin **indulgéntia,** a Roman legal term meaning a remission of punishment or taxation. A Plenary Indulgence, from the Latin **plenus,** *full,* is therefore an indulgence remitting the full temporal punishment due to sin.

JÁNUA COELI, *Gate of Heaven,* a title given to our Lady in the Litany of Loreto. Janus was the most ancient of all the kings of Italy. He built a small town on the River Tiber, called Janiculum, from which the Monte Gianicolo takes its name. After his death he was ranked among the gods, and was represented with two faces, one looking backward over the past, the other looking forward over the future. He had a small temple in the Forum,* with two doors opposite each other, which stood open in time of war, and shut in time of peace.† All doors, gates, avenues, and beginnings were sacred to Janus, and January, the month which begins the year, was called after him. In religious ceremonies his name was invoked first, since he was said to preside over the gate through which the prayers of men passed to the immortal gods. The word **jánua,** *a gateway,* or *door,* is derived from Janus, the god of gateways, and so, in the Litany of Loreto, the pagan idea which centred round the old Roman god, Janus, is transferred to our Lady, who is indeed the gateway through which our prayers pass to Heaven.

MASS, from the Latin **missa,** another form of **míssio,** *dismissal.* The term was originally used for the two dismissals during the service, the first that of the catechumens, after the sermon, the second that of the rest of the congregation at the end of the proceedings.‡ It is curious that the word which signified a dismissal from the service should come to be used for the service

* The Forum was a large open space between the Palatine and Capitoline hills, where most of the business of Rome was transacted.

† In the course of seven hundred years they were only shut on three occasions.

‡ *Cf.* **Ite, missa est,** *Go, the mass is finished.*

itself, and some authorities support the explanation that in the sixth and seventh centuries, when the term **missa** began to have the meaning which we give to the word Mass, short Masses, consisting of the Canon only, were said at the end of the Canonical Hours, and came to be regarded as services of dismissal.

MONSTRANCE, from the Latin **monstro,** *I show :* the vessel in which the Blessed Sacrament is exposed or "shown forth" at Benediction or in procession.

PATEN, from the Latin **pátina,** *a dish :* the plate used to receive the Host consecrated at the Mass.

PISCINA, from the Latin **piscína,** *a fishpond,* or tank for keeping fish (from **piscis,** *a fish*). Later the word came to mean a basin or bath, and in the early Latin Church it was used to denote the baptismal font. In the Middle Ages it was applied to the niche in the wall on the Epistle side of the altar, containing a perforated basin through which was poured the water used in washing the priest's hands.

PONTIFF, PONTIFICATE, from the Latin **Póntifex,** which may be derived from **pons, pontis,** *a bridge,* and the root of **fácio,** *I make* or *build,* and thus means a bridge-builder. The term **Póntifex Máximus** meant the High Priest at Rome in ancient times; he was looked on as the builder of the bridge between gods and men. The office of Pontifex dates from the earliest period of Roman history.

RUBRICS, from the Latin **ruber,** *red.* The term **rúbrica** was first used to mean the red earth used by a carpenter in drawing a line on a piece of wood to show where to cut it. Later the word passed into the language of the law, and was used for the titles, maxims, decisions, etc., which were written in red. In Christian times it came to mean the directions and instructions to be followed in the Mass and other services; these were written in red ink, while the passages for recitation were written in black.

SACRAMENT, from the Latin **sacraméntum,** which was originally a legal term, and meant the *deposit,* or *pledge,* which both the plaintiff and the defendant were obliged to make at the beginning of a lawsuit. The one who lost his case forfeited the deposit, which was set aside for some sacred purpose, or for use in the temple. The word next came to mean the pledge, or oath, taken by a Roman soldier not to desert his standard in battle, and this meaning was afterwards extended to any oath or pledge. In Christian times it first meant the oath which a soldier of Christ

took when he swore to be true to his standard or faith; next it meant anything which sanctified men; and finally it was defined by the Church as "a visible sign of invisible grace instituted for our justification."

VIATICUM, a Latin word which originally meant *journey money,* or *provisions for the way* (from **via,** *a road* or *way*). Next it came to mean provision for the journey of life, and finally the term was applied to Holy Communion when administered to the dying, the provision for the soul on its last journey from this world into the next.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES FROM ENGLISH INTO LATIN

EXERCISE I.

1. They are praying. 2. We love. 3. Thou praisest. 4. You blame. 5. I am calling. 6. He does not hope. 7. They deliver. 8. We adore. 9. He is reigning. 10. You do not praise.

EXERCISE II.

1. The handmaid is praying. 2. The woman is not calling. 3. The queen does not hope. 4. The woman does not blame. 5. The girl praises. 6. The queen is not reigning. 7. We hope. 8. He adores. 9. The woman does not praise. 10. The girl calls.

EXERCISE III.

1. The woman is calling the girl. 2. We love the queen. 3. The handmaid praises the letter. 4. The daughter blames the handmaid. 5. The queen delivers the handmaid. 6. We often blame the woman. 7. The girl loves life. 8. The woman and the girl love (their)* native land. 9. I praise the rose. 10. We are always praising the queen.

EXERCISE IV.

1. Who is calling? 2. Why do you not praise the girl? 3. Who does not love life? 4. I blame the daughter because she does not love the queen. 5. Why are you praying? 6. The woman often praises the girl and the handmaid. 7. He is always blaming the woman. 8. Why do you blame the handmaid? 9. I praise the queen because she is delivering the handmaid. 10. Who does not love Mary?

EXERCISE V.

1. The woman's daughter loves the queen. 2. The girl praises the glory of the star. 3. The handmaid praises the queen's

* Words in brackets should not be translated.

crown. 4. He does not love the queen's daughter. 5. The woman blames the handmaid's letter. 6. We love the earth. 7. Who does not praise the life of Mary? 8. We are praising the queen's rose. 9. We always love (our) native land. 10. Who does not often hope?

EXERCISE VI.

1. The queen is giving a rose to the girl. 2. The handmaid points out the star to the woman. 3. The queen's daughter is telling a story to the handmaid. 4. Who is giving the queen (*dative*) a letter? 5. They often tell a story to the woman's daughter. 6. Who is pointing out the glory of the star to the queen? 7. I am giving the queen's letter to the handmaid. 8. We often praise the glory of the earth. 9. Why do you not adore? 10. The girl tells the woman (*dative*) a story.

EXERCISE VII.

1. A crown of stars. 2. The girls' roses. 3. The girl gives letters to the woman's daughter. 4. The handmaids are telling stories to the girls. 5. The woman gives the girls water. 6. I do not praise the queen's roses. 7. The women point out the water and the land to the girl. 8. The handmaids are adorning the queen. 9. We love the hours of life. 10. The girls are pointing out the road to the woman.

EXERCISE VIII.

1. The queen is helping the woman with money. 2. The handmaid is adorning the queen with a crown of roses. 3. I do not praise the girl because she does not pray. 4. Why do you not help the woman with money? 5. Who is pointing out the road to the girls? 6. Whose roses are you giving to the queen? 7. Why do you blame the girl's letters? 8. We are adorning the girls with roses. 9. I do not praise the woman because she does not help (her) daughter. 10. The woman is telling the queen's daughter a story.

EXERCISE IX.

1. The girls fear the water. 2. We see the glory of the stars. 3. The woman teaches the queen's daughters. 4. The queen often terrifies (her) handmaidens. 5. I have a letter and a rose. 6. We do not often see the queen and (her) daughter. 7. Whose letter are you holding? 8. The girls are adorning the queen's daughters with roses. 9. Why do you fear the woman? 10. Who has the queen's letters?

EXERCISE X.

1. The good queen loves the little girl. 2. The joyful handmaids are adorning the girl with roses. 3. The good woman blames the bad girls. 4. The handmaid is pointing out the long road to the queen. 5. The handmaid is telling a long story to the little girls. 6. The great queen is helping the woman with money. 7. We do not praise the girl's bad letter. 8. Why do you fear the great queen? 9. Who teaches the queen's little daughters? 10. The little girls are giving the queen a rose.

EXERCISE XI.

1. The queen is great. 2. The girls are good. 3. The road is long. 4. Thou art a queen. 5. The queen's daughter is a handmaid of Mary. 6. The great queen terrifies the woman's little daughter. 7. The woman blames the girl because she is not good. 8. The handmaid is joyful because the queen is liberating the woman. 9. The little girl is holding the queen's letter. 10. We have crowns of roses.

EXERCISE XII.

1. Why do you not dare to hope? 2. The woman is afraid (*timet*) to help the girl with money. 3. The queen wishes to give the girl a rose. 4. The girl does not dare to blame the queen's daughters. 5. We ought to pray often. 6. Why are you afraid to give the letter to the queen? 7. You ought not to blame the handmaid because she loves (her) native land. 8. The queen orders the woman to point out the road. 9. The little girl wishes to see the roses. 10. The girl orders the handmaid to help the woman with money.

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Why cannot he see the queen? 2. We are able to help the woman. 3. You ought not to fear the queen. 4. I cannot see the star. 5. Whose roses can you see? 6. The little girl cannot blame the queen's daughter. 7. I can tell long stories. 8. Who does not dare to hope? 9. We cannot help the handmaidens. 10. Why can I not call the woman?

EXERCISE XIV.

1. The slaves love the great queen. 2. We adore the Lamb of God. 3. Christ delivers the world. 4. Who can see the queen's son? 5. We ought always to praise the great glory of God.

6. The handmaid gives the letters to the slave. 7. We love Mary, the handmaid of the Lord. 8. The queen orders the slave to give the rose to the little girl. 9. The woman does not dare to help the slave with money. 10. The great queen terrifies the slave's son.

EXERCISE XV.

1. We love the apostles Peter and Paul. 2. The queen praises the girl's eyes. 3. The angels see the great glory of the Lord. 4. God loves the world. 5. The great queen delivers the people. 6. The wicked slave does not dare to blame the friend of the queen's son. 7. We ought to love the saints. 8. We are giving (our) friends roses. 9. Why do you not dare to give the slaves money? 10. The slaves' friends fear the great queen.

EXERCISE XVI.

1. The handmaid does not praise my letter. 2. Great is thy glory, O God. 3. My slave cannot sing. 4. Why do you fear the broad waters? 5. The queen is giving the woman many roses. 6. God enlightens thine eyes. 7. We do not love the queen's sons because they are wicked. 8. Whom do you praise? Whom do you blame? 9. I am pointing out many stars to the queen's little sons. 10. The slave's friend can tell long stories.

EXERCISE XVII.

1. How many slaves and handmaids have you? 2. The queen's little son has a white lamb. 3. The slave is pointing out the bright stars to (his) friend. 4. The great queen saves the women and little girls. 5. My daughter teaches the queen's sons. 6. How many roses can you see? 7. Why are you knocking at the queen's door? 8. The queen's son is beloved. 9. I have many servants. 10. God enlightens the eyes of the people.

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. The servants are ploughing the fields. 2. The queen terrifies the boys. 3. The master gives the boy a book. 4. I do not praise the naughty boys. 5. The servants are telling stories to the little boys. 6. The master teaches the queen's sons. 7. The wicked slave does not dare to knock at the queen's door. 8. The men and the boys are ploughing the fields. 9. Why are you calling my servant? 10. The master orders the boys to knock at the door.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Our queen is good and beautiful. 2. The bad master often frightens the little boys. 3. Your slaves are miserable, ours are joyful. 4. The little girl has beautiful eyes. 5. The queen's son wishes to help the unhappy slave with money. 6. Why are you warning your friend? 7. I cannot see land; the waters are wide. 8. The handmaid is unhappy because the queen does not praise (her) letter. 9. I have many lambs. 10. Why are you knocking at my door?

EXERCISE XX.

1. Mary is the help of Christians. 2. We praise the master's words. 3. Why do you fear war? 4. We ought always to blame sin. 5. The servants are knocking at the gate. 6. You often frighten the little girls with your words. 7. The queen wishes to help the woman with money. 8. The master orders the boys to plough the fields. 9. Long wars terrify the unhappy women. 10. Who does not praise the words of the great queen?

EXERCISE XXI.

1. The queen's son delivers the girl from danger. 2. The woman is always blaming me and praising you. 3. Our sins are great. 4. Your words frighten the little boy. 5. We do not love long wars. 6. We ought not to judge the queen. 7. We praise Thee, O Lord. 8. Who dares to blame us? 9. I praise the good words of the great queen. 10. Why do you fear the danger, O boy?

EXERCISE XXII.

1. The slave is standing before the gate. 2. The handmaid is praying for the queen. 3. The master orders the boys to fight for (their) country. 4. My slaves are fighting with your servants. 5. We ought to pray for the woman because she is unhappy. 6. After many hours of danger we dare to be joyful. 7. We fear the dangers of a long war. 8. Who can see the bright stars of heaven? 9. I order you to fight for the queen. 10. We ought not to praise the slave, because he is wicked.

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. The boys are in the fields. 2. The queen is walking in the road. 3. We can see the stars in the heavens. 4. The miserable slaves are fighting in the streets. 5. The boy is walking towards the gates. 6. The master orders the slave to walk with the

queen's son. 7. Our handmaids are walking from the fields with your daughter. 8. Why are you walking into the water? 9. Who is fighting with your son? 10. The little boy wishes to fight for the queen.

EXERCISE XXIV.

1. The just do not fear the anger of the Lord. 2. The blessed are in heaven. 3. The unhappy slaves cry to thee, O great queen. 4. We ought to love our enemies. 5. The little boys fear the master's anger. 6. God delivers us from evil. 7. The wicked do not see God. 8. Why are you not fighting for your country? 9. I cannot save you from danger. 10. You ought to pray for the queen's soul.

EXERCISE XXV.

1. The queen's son is dead. 2. Why are you lifting up your right hand? 3. The great queen delivers us from our enemies. 4. I lift up my soul to the Lord. 5. The queen's son is sitting in the field. 6. Who is walking towards the gate? 7. We ought to pray for the souls of the dead. 8. My son is alive, but my daughter is dead. 9. We hope in Thy mercy, O Lord. 10. The right hand of God exalts me.

EXERCISE XXVI.

1. The slave is leading the little boy. 2. What do you say? 3. A queen is ruling our land. 4. Whither goest Thou, Lord? 5. Whom are you sending into the fields? 6. The boys are playing in the streets. 7. I am writing a letter. 8. The queen is going towards the gate. 9. The queen wishes to send a slave to the handmaid. 10. I can tell many stories about the war.

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. We ought to defend our friends from danger. 2. Angels have wings. 3. The good master protects the little boys. 4. We ought not to leave the gates because the slaves are fighting in the streets. 5. The women and children are crying to the queen, but (she) cannot protect us. 6. God blesses the world. 7. What is the master saying about the queen's son? 8. The angels protect us beneath the shadow of (their) wings. 9. I do not know you. 10. Why are you walking in the fields?

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Christ takes away the sins of the world. 2. You cannot play in the streets now. 3. God forgives our sins. 4. Who does not wish to save his own life? 5. The master cannot protect you

from the dangers of war. 6. We ought to pray for the soul of the dead handmaid. 7. The naughty boys are standing before the master. 8. I often fear the anger of the great queen. 9. Christians ought to pray for their enemies. 10. The queen forgives the slave's sin.

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. I cannot hear the queen's words. 2. The master is punishing the naughty boys. 3. We are now coming to the gates. 4. The queen's son always hears us graciously. 5. The woman is burying her dead son. 6. You ought not to hinder the master. 7. The woman orders the slave to punish the unhappy boy. 8. The queen is arriving at the gate. 9. Who cannot hear my words? 10. The slaves are burying the dead boy.

EXERCISE XXX.

1. The handmaid gives thanks to Mary. 2. The slaves cannot open the gate. 3. Who is guarding the queen? 4. We give thanks to Thee for (on account of) Thy great glory, O Lord. 5. The angels guard us from danger. 6. Why do they give us (*dative*) roses? 7. We often fear you on account of your anger. 8. Why are you thanking the queen? She does not help you. 9. You cannot play in the fields now, boys. 10. Why are you opening the gate, slave?

EXERCISE XXXI.

1. Turn Thine eyes towards us, O Lord. 2. Give thanks to God. 3. Come to me and help me. 4. Lift up thine eyes to the Lord. 5. Save us, O God, and deliver us from evil. 6. Intercede for us, O blessed Mary. 7. The angels stand before the throne of God. 8. Hail, Mary, full of grace! 9. Why are you hindering the master, boys? 10. The slave wishes to come to the queen.

EXERCISE XXXII.

1. The queen will liberate us. 2. The master's anger will terrify the little boys. 3. Who will dare to give your letter to the queen? 4. We will lift up our eyes to the Lord. 5. I will pray for your son. 6. Who will save us from danger? 7. The master will order the slave to punish the boy. 8. The little girls will see the great queen. 9. The woman will call the handmaid. 10. Who will warn the queen's son?

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Who will be my servant ? 2. The handmaids will be joyful. 3. He will not dare to come to the great queen. 4. Love (your) enemies and help (your) friends. 5. We shall see the queen again. 6. The slave is guarding the gate alone. 7. Send a letter to the queen's son. 8. I shall not warn you again. 9. The just walk in the ways of the Lord. 10. Your son is not pious.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. We shall rise again. 2. Who will defend us from the danger ? 3. The queen will hear us graciously. 4. I will read your book again. 5. The boys will not hear the master's words. 6. I will show the handmaid my book. 7. Who will intercede for us ? 8. You will be happy because you are good. 9. I shall never see my friend again. 10. Order your servant to open the door.

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. The master was praising the good boys. 2. We used to see the queen's sons and daughters. 3. As it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be, world without end. 4. The boys and girls were playing in the fields. 5. The woman's anger often used to frighten the little girl. 6. My son used to teach the queen's daughter. 7. I was not able to read your book. 8. The slave was pointing out the stars to the handmaid. 9. Why were you opening the door ? 10. Many slaves were guarding the gates.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. The woman was weeping because she was burying her son. 2. Come with us to the fields. 3. Who will walk with me to the gate ? 4. Hear my words, slave. 5. The angels were descending from heaven. 6. Who will tell us (*dative*) about the war ? 7. The blessed ascend to the heavens. 8. What were you saying to the queen ? 9. I will come with you to the field. 10. Who will be able to open the gate again ?

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. The shepherd was guarding the lambs in the field. 2. Your work is good, boys. 3. Christ is our Redeemer. 4. We can hear the shouts of the boys in the street. 5. The love of God is eternal. 6. I will give my roses to the women. 7. We praise the life of

the martyrs. 8. I shall not praise your work, because it is not good. 9. We used to see the shepherds in the fields. 10. Come with us to the water.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Soldiers often love war. 2. Give praise to God, because He is good. 3. The Lord will hear my prayer. 4. I will give thanks to God. 5. We praise the virtue of the just. 6. God will give peace to the world. 7. Little boys love soldiers. 8. We will come to thee, O Mary, Virgin of Virgins. 9. Order your soldiers to fight for the queen. 10. Peace (be) with you.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. The little girl was giving bread to the unhappy slaves. 2. We shall see our father and mother to-day. 3. God will give us our daily bread. 4. God is the light of the world. 5. Pray for us in the hour of our death. 6. Come with me to-morrow to the queen. 7. Who is guarding the gate to-day? 8. To-morrow the soldiers will go (forth) to war. 9. Grant us Thy peace, O Lord. 10. Give bread to the shepherds in the fields.

EXERCISE XL.

1. Who is the author of your book? 2. I shall see my sister to-morrow. 3. Christ is the way, the light, and the truth. 4. We can hear the shouts of the soldiers who are fighting in the street. 5. The little boys cannot hear the master's voice. 6. Who will lead us to the fields? 7. We ought to give honour to our father and mother. 8. Who is the queen's confessor? 9. Soldiers ought not to fear death. 10. I used to play with my sisters in the field.

EXERCISE XLI.

1. Give me a rose. 2. I will point out the stars to you. 3. We used to guard the sheep in the fields. 4. Who will lead me to the mountain? 5. You are a servant, I am a slave. 6. Who will give me a book? 7. I will order my slave to open the gates. 8. We ought always to pray for sinners. 9. I will lift up mine eyes to the hills. 10. God will give thee His peace.

EXERCISE XLII.

1. We will praise the name of the Lord. 2. The works of God are great. 3. The little girls fear the deep waters of the sea. 4. How many names have you? 5. We ought to love God with

our whole heart. 6. I will stand before the altar of God. 7. Give me a light, because I cannot see. 8. I will arise and go to my father. 9. Why do you fear the sea? 10. Your words are fair, but your heart is bad.

EXERCISE XLIII.

1. The soldier has a wound in his side. 2. Lift up your eyes to the cross. 3. The handmaid is standing before the altar. 4. Our Lord has a crown of thorns. 5. Christ is hanging on the cross. 6. Wash the soldier's wounds, O slave. 7. Open your mouths and sing, boys. 8. Who will give his life for the queen? 9. I can hear the shouts of the men who are ploughing the fields. 10. The boys were playing in the street.

EXERCISE XLIV.

1. Give peace in our time, O God. 2. God is our help and our salvation. 3. The priest was standing before the altar. 4. I have a wound in my head. 5. God will deliver us in the time of danger. 6. Bring me your letter, O boy. 7. Sign me with the sign of the cross. 8. We ought to help the women in time of war. 9. I will praise the works of the Lord. 10. Hide me within Thy wounds, O Lord.

EXERCISE XLV.

1. All my slaves are faithful. 2. The handmaid is sweet and humble. 3. The hours of life are short. 4. I was praising the work of all the boys. 5. We shall all praise the brave soldiers. 6. The angels will protect us in all dangers. 7. The queen's daughters are good and amiable. 8. Give roses to all the women. 9. We praise the words of the humble handmaidens. 10. All nations will give thanks to the Lord.

EXERCISE XLVI.

1. God is the Creator of all men. 2. We hear the master's wise words. 3. The prudent woman does not blame the master's son. 4. I shall keep all your words in my heart. 5. We will give thanks to Almighty God. 6. The soldiers are merciful and will help the women and children. 7. The wise queen will send a slave to the gate and will order the soldiers to defend the handmaid. 8. The lambs love the kind shepherd. 9. The queen is great and powerful. 10. I do not blame the words of the wise master.

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. If you are sad I will help you. 2. I will send a swift messenger into the city. 3. The boys are happy because the master praises (their) work. 4. If you are bold you will fight for your queen and country. 5. The swift birds are flying in the heavens. 6. I will come to you immediately if you are unhappy. 7. The queen will come to the city to-morrow. 8. I can hear the shouts of the happy boys who are playing in the fields. 9. The women were weeping because they were sad. 10. I cannot come with you to-day, but I will go to the city to-morrow.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. We do not fear the great waves of the sea. 2. The army is coming in sight (in *w. acc.*) of the city. 3. In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. 4. The slave is holding a book in his hand. 5. The priest will pray for the army. 6. Receive my prayer, O Lord. 7. (There) are many soldiers in our army. 8. The queen will send a swift messenger to the priest. 9. The soldier has a wound in his knee. 10. All praise the virtue of the soldiers

EXERCISE XLIX.

1. God is our hope and our refuge. 2. Little girls fear many things. 3. The faith of the shepherd was great. 4. We will remain many days with you in the city. 5. I could not see the queen's face. 6. We could see the woman's faith. 7. The apostle was filled with the Holy Ghost. 8. The soldier lifted his hand to the heavens. 9. Women often fear many things in time of war. 10. How many days will you remain with us ?

EXERCISE L.

1. The priest will baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. 2. What is disquieting thee, my son ? 3. I will rejoice and give thanks to the Lord. 4. God will grant eternal rest to the souls of the faithful. 5. We all praise the wise words of the great queen. 6. Whose book were you reading yesterday ? 7. If you will come to me, I will teach you many things. 8. All nations praise the Lord. 9. Who will baptize your little son ? 10. Wherefore art thou sad ?

EXERCISE LI.

1. The master praised the boys because they had pointed out the road to the woman. 2. Your words are not true. 3. The king blamed the soldier because he had not fought for his country. 4. We had adorned the queen with roses. 5. The handmaids had prayed for the king's son. 6. I have often praised your work. 7. The queen had helped the woman with money. 8. The king loved the soldier and helped (him). 9. Why had your sister blamed the little girl? 10. True Christians will always give honour to Mary, the Mother of God.

EXERCISE LII.

1. Why did you not warn the king? 2. The slave had been faithful. 3. My servants have built a beautiful house. 4. The master's anger had terrified the little boy. 5. The slaves had kept watch in the city. 6. God will judge us. 7. Whose book are you reading? 8. Your sister has not been prudent. 9. The slave held the queen's letter in (his) hand. 10. Who has pointed out the stars to the little girls?

EXERCISE LIII.

1. If you work well to-morrow, I shall praise you. 2. He will have been king ten (*decem*) years to-morrow. 3. I shall have warned him in vain if he still (*adhuc*) wishes to be a soldier. 4. Many men built our city. 5. The master will have taught your son in vain. 6. Why did you not praise the king? 7. The kind shepherds will protect the little lambs and the sheep. 8. Unless you work well to-morrow, the master will punish you. 9. My father built our house. 10. You will help the woman and (her) daughter in vain.

EXERCISE LIV.

1. What did the king say? 2. The queen had ruled many years in our city. 3. The slaves will guard the gates in vain if the soldiers fight (*future*) in the streets. 4. The shepherd will have led the sheep into the fields. 5. The kind woman had helped the slave with money. 6. I blamed the master because he had terrified the little boys. 7. The queen will remain ten days in our city. 8. The priest blessed the little girl. 9. Why had the slaves taken (*lit.* led) the boys to the fields? 10. The good shepherd loved all his sheep.

EXERCISE LV.

1. My brother had dwelt in the city for ten years. 2. We shall not praise you if you have not guarded the sheep well. 3. We had heard the loud (*lit.* great) shouts of the soldiers. 4. The boys will not have heard the master's words. 5. The priest had baptized the king's son. 6. All nations will rejoice in the name of the Lord. 7. The river is wide and deep. 8. To-morrow I shall have overcome my enemies. 9. To-morrow we shall have come to the great river. 10. The king's grief was great because the enemy* had attacked our city.

EXERCISE LVI.

1. We saw the queen's daughters in the fields. 2. The king ordered the soldiers to fight for (their) country. 3. Many apples (*poma*) hung from the tree. 4. Why did you remain alone in the city? 5. The women sat beneath the tree in the shade. 6. Why did the handmaid weep? 7. I will give you many gifts if you work well. 8. The boys were carrying the books in their hands. 9. We will kindle a fire in the field. 10. The master ordered the boy to go into the city.

EXERCISE LVII.

1. Why did you send a messenger to the king? 2. The sheep and the lambs knew the shepherd. 3. I have left my book in the field. 4. The angels descended from heaven. 5. I have written many letters to-day. 6. The master turned his eyes on (**in** *w. acc.*) the little boy. 7. The slaves defended the gates of the city. 8. Who ordered the handmaid to give my letter to the slave? 9. We ought to praise the men who fight for (their) country. 10. We saw the king and queen. 11. We have come to the great river to-day. 12. The boys leapt into the water. 13. Who has opened the gate? 14. The wounded soldier felt much pain. 15. The shepherd had driven his sheep into the field. 16. I have not seen your books. 17. The slaves had opened the gate before daylight. 18. The soldier had leapt into the waves. 19. We have not come to the gates of the city. 20. I did not feel (any) pain.

EXERCISE LVIII.

1. The woman is helped by the queen. 2. The boys are praised by the master. 3. The handmaid is blamed by the woman.

* Enemy (**hostis**) is generally used in the plural in Latin (**hostes**).

4. The queen's daughters are taught by the master. 5. The letter is carried by the handmaid. 6. We are loved by our sisters. 7. You are warned by the king's messenger. 8. The stars are pointed out by the king's servant. 9. The slave is liberated by the woman. 10. Christ is adored by all nations.

EXERCISE LIX.

1. Our country is ruled by a king. 2. The master's words are heard by all the boys. 3. The king is wounded by a soldier. 4. The sheep are tended by the shepherd. 5. The boys are being punished by the master. 6. The dead soldier is being buried by the slaves. 7. We are being punished because we have sinned. 8. The handmaid is called by the woman. 9. The little boys are frightened by the master's words. 10. The messenger is sent by the king.

EXERCISE LX.

1. We were being helped by the soldiers. 2. The stars were being pointed out to the little girl. 3. The boys were being praised by the master. 4. The gates used to be guarded by a slave. 5. A messenger was being sent to the king. 6. The slaves were being punished by the king's son. 7. All the handmaids were being adorned with roses. 8. The soldiers are ordered to fight for their country. 9. We have remained many months in your city. 10. Why did you not send a messenger to the city ?

EXERCISE LXI.

1. The master's voice will not be heard by many of the boys. 2. If you work well you will be praised by your mother. 3. Our city will be ruled by the king's son. 4. I shall be taught by your master. 5. The slaves will be liberated by the queen. 6. We shall see many flowers in the field. 7. You will be adorned with roses. 8. We shall be protected by the king's servants. 9. The boy will be punished by his mother because he is naughty. 10. The little boy was sleeping in the field.

EXERCISE LXII.

1. The girl is taller than the boy. 2. Your rose is more beautiful than mine. 3. What can be sadder than to hear the slave's story ? 4. My father is the tallest of all the king's servants. 5. Who is the wisest of the masters ? 6. We ought to praise the

soldiers who fight for (their) country. 7. My roses are more beautiful than your flowers. 8. I will send the swiftest messenger to the city. 9. The boy was bolder than (his) sister. 10. The wisest servants will be praised by the queen.

EXERCISE LXIII.

1. The master is unjust because he punished a boy who was working well. 2. The slave was most wretched because he had not protected the king's little son. 3. My brother is the smallest of all the boys. 4. Your works are the wisest and greatest. 5. The rose is the most beautiful of all flowers. 6. Who will help the poorest of the slaves ? 7. The best boy will be praised by the master. 8. Your brother will be created king. 9. The bravest of the soldiers will be sent to the king. 10. Your works are greater than mine.

EXERCISE LXIV.

1. The boys, terrified by the master's voice, were not able to work. 2. The king, warned by the messenger, came immediately to the city. 3. My house was built by the shepherd's brother. 4. The queen was loved by all the people. 5. We have been praised by the king's son. 6. The stars were pointed out to the shepherd. 7. The worst boy was blamed by the master. 8. The most beautiful of the girls was adorned with roses. 9. Money has been given to the poorest women by the queen's daughters. 10. The soldier was warned by the swiftest of the messengers.

EXERCISE LXV.

1. The king was seen by all the people. 2. The queen's sons had been taught by the wisest of the masters. 3. The swiftest messenger was ordered to warn the shepherds. 4. We shall have been seen by all. 5. If you work badly, you will be punished. 6. The dead girl had been loved by all (her) friends. 7. The smallest of the boys had been punished by the unjust master. 8. We had been warned by the king's most faithful slave. 9. I have heard your most prudent words. 10. The handmaid had been ordered to give the most beautiful of the flowers to the king's daughter.

EXERCISE LXVI.

1. Many letters had been written by the king with his (own) hand. 2. The road had been pointed out to the soldier by the wisest of the shepherds. 3. The dead lamb had been buried by the little

boy. 4. The sheep had been led to the fields by the soldier's son. 5. The messenger, sent by the king, came into the city. 6. The books had been left in the fields. 7. The gates of the city had been opened by the slaves. 8. The eyes of all were turned upon the king and queen. 9. I did not hear the words spoken by the king's son. 10. All the sheep were known by the shepherds.

EXERCISE LXVII.

1. I shall always be mindful of you and your sister. 2. He gave us many of (his) most beautiful roses. 3. Who is wiser than the king? 4. I will give you all my books. 5. The little girl saw herself in the water of the river. 6. Whom did you see? I saw no one. 7. The girl praises herself but blames me. 8. He showed me the most beautiful of the stars. 9. He ought to be forgetful of himself. 10. Led by the tallest of the slaves the king's smallest son came into the field.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

1. That boy does not work well, therefore you ought to punish him. 2. Those flowers are more beautiful than mine. 3. My sister is the queen's handmaid. 4. Send the boy to me and I will give him the money. 5. What is more beautiful than that rose? 6. Their works are great. 7. We saw the king and his son in the street. 8. His slaves have not fought for (their) country. 9. The poorest of the women will be helped with bread and money. 10. That book was written by the wisest of the masters.

EXERCISE LXIX.

1. This girl is my sister. 2. I will give your book to this boy. 3. This is the most beautiful of the roses. 4. Who will blame this wretched slave? 5. I have not seen a better sword than this. 6. The king praised all the soldiers of the army because they had fought well. 7. The messenger said these things and went into the house. 8. I praise these works. 9. The king remained many days in this city. 10. This boy's book has been left in the field.

EXERCISE LXX.

1. This boy is good, that one (is) bad. 2. Give these books to that girl. 3. I shall be mindful of this handmaid. 4. This soldier has always been forgetful of himself. 5. This slave will be praised by the king, but that one will be punished. 6. I cannot

undertake this work alone. 7. This is the messenger who announced these things to the king. 8. These books are long, those (are) short. 9. I will give many gifts to that boy because he has worked well. 10. This is the priest who will baptize your little son.

EXERCISE LXXI.

1. We saw the bird flying in the heavens. 2. I heard the messenger announcing these things. 3. I saw the woman sitting beneath the tree in the shade. 4. I heard the master praising the best boys. 5. Who heard the little boy crying in the street? 6. We saw the queen entering the house. 7. The wise men, falling down, worshipped the little Lord. 8. I saw the priest standing before the altar. 9. We found the boys playing in the fields. 10. The shepherds saw the angels ascending and descending in the sky.

EXERCISE LXXII.

1. The master was about to punish the boy. 2. The priest, approaching, was about to baptize the queen's little son. 3. The king ordered the soldiers to flee from the city. 4. Seeing the messenger in the street, he ordered (him) to carry a letter to the queen. 5. The woman could not speak for joy. 6. I am waiting for my sister. 7. The king, amazed by the messenger's words, descended from the mountain. 8. I will give testimony for (*pro*) the king. 9. Who will roll back the stone from the door? 10. The boy was about to announce the master's words.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

1. We will sacrifice a victim to the Lord. 2. The king, answering, ordered the messenger to go to the city. 3. This is the end of the book. 4. We shall take the city to-morrow. 5. The soldiers were fleeing from the fields. 6. The queen's son did not despise the slaves. 7. Who will deliver us from evil? 8. The master was looking at the little boy. 9. What are you doing? 10. We will undertake this work for you.

EXERCISE LXXIV.

1. Do not give that book to this boy. 2. Lead the soldiers into the city. 3. Why are you vexing the master? 4. Do not kill. 5. The soldiers have not yet taken the city. 6. We saw the slaves fleeing from the river. 7. Lifting up his eyes, he saw the stone rolled away. 8. Do this and I will give you a reward.

9. Do not condemn this man, because he has fought for (his) country. 10. The apostle touched the man with (his) hand and bade (him) rise.

EXERCISE LXXV.

1. The handmaid is praying before the altar. 2. Who will follow my slave into the city? 3. I will confess my sins. 4. The soldier, wounded in the head, was dying. 5. Christ suffered many things for us. 6. My tongue shall give praise to the Lord. 7. We will rejoice and give thanks to God. 8. The crowd was in the street, waiting for the king. 9. Who is following me? 10. The soldier was confessing his sins to the priest.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

1. Follow me and I will lead you to the city. 2. Be warned by me, and carry this letter to the king. 3. Praise the good laws of our country. 4. The messenger did not dare to enter the city. 5. We ought to confess our sins at once. 6. The king ordered the slave to follow the messenger. 7. If you wish to do this, do (it) at once. 8. The master was about to speak, but the boy fled. 9. Stretching out his hand, the apostle cleansed the leper. 10. You cannot follow him now.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

1. The boy whom I saw playing in the fields is the master's son. 2. The slave whose brother you saw guarding the gate is most faithful to the king. 3. The handmaid to whom you gave this rose is my sister. 4. The soldier by whom the king was killed will be punished. 5. The boys whose work is badly done* will not play in the fields to-day. 6. Why did you dare to follow the queen? 7. The woman gave the wretched slave food and clothing. 8. The snow is deepest in the fields. 9. I did not hear all the words which the king spoke. 10. Do not praise the handmaidens who have not worked well.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

1. The slave returned from the city with the letter which the king had given (him). 2. The soldiers went away from that place immediately. 3. We shall cross the sea to-morrow in the ship which the queen sent to us. 4. Many soldiers perished in that place. 5. The disciples were entering the city at that time. 6. I

* Future-perfect passive of facio.

did not see the boy as he was going out of (*ex*) the city. 7. We shall return to our native land to-morrow. 8. I will not enter your house again. 9. The handmaid was preparing supper in that place. 10. A great crowd followed the disciples.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

1. Let us pray. 2. Let us prepare the ways of the Lord. 3. May the king be loved by all. 4. Let the master's words be heard by all the boys. 5. Let us send a messenger to the king at once. 6. Let us be brave and fight for (our) country. 7. Who will find the book which I have lost? 8. Let us kill the slave who did not guard the gates. 9. Why are you going into the fields? You ought to be working. 10. I know this boy, but I do not know his brother.

EXERCISE LXXX.

1. The queen herself helped the poor woman with money. 2. I shall go into the city myself in order that I may see the king. 3. The boy is working well in order that he may be praised by the master. 4. Let us carry the soldier into a safe place, for he has been wounded in the foot. 5. Let us punish the messenger who has lost our letter. 6. Do not go* into the city alone. 7. Why did you destroy that book? 8. Let us plough the fields ourselves in order that we may help the wretched slaves. 9. Let us sacrifice this victim to the Lord. 10. Do not help that soldier, because he has wounded the king's son.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

1. He went into the city in order that he might see his father.† 2. He gave me money in order that I might help the poor woman. 3. Do not go away without me. 4. This is the slave whose brother has been wounded in the war. 5. Let us go ourselves into the fields in order that we may guard the lambs and sheep. 6. Who will remain with me in the ship? 7. Why are you going to the city without your brother? 8. I will give you all the roses which my mother sent me. 9. Do not undertake this task alone. 10. Eleven of the soldiers perished in the water.

EXERCISE LXXXII.

1. If you are hungry, I will give you bread. 2. We have fasted forty days. 3. By chance the slave had come to the gates of the town. 4. Let us minister to the wounded soldier. 5. You

* For Subjunctives of **eo**, see page 103.

† For sequence of tenses, see page 115.

ought not to tempt the slave to leave the gates. 6. Do not open the letter which the master has written to your father. 7. The light is shining in the darkness. 8. We sent a swift messenger to the city in order to warn the king. 9. Let us all help the poor. 10. The shepherd was going to the field in order to guard the sheep.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

1. Having taken the city, the soldiers departed. 2. The gates being opened, we went out of the city. 3. Having caught five fish, I returned to the city. 4. Having shut the gates, the slave went away. 5. Having killed his brother, he fled into the wood. 6. Having seized his sword, he killed the king. 7. He gave me these roses that I might give them to the poor woman. 8. I will go to the city to-morrow with my two friends. 9. The priest, having baptized the child, went away. 10. Do not blame that boy.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

1. The young man was going into the city to buy bread. 2. We have already read the book which you gave us. 3. They saw a man clothed in a white robe. 4. Where did you put my letter? 5. I have bought a horse in order that I may fight in the war. 6. I will go before you into the city. 7. Do this in order that you may be praised. 8. Having killed the king, the soldier fled from the city. 9. What is better than to die for (one's) country? 10. Do not move this stone.

EXERCISE LXXXV.

1. When he had come to the gates of the city, he saw a messenger carrying a letter. 2. The blind boy heard the soldiers fighting in the street. 3. When he had sat down he opened the letter and read (it). 4. Both the centurion and the shepherd had gone to the city to warn the king. 5. When we had crossed the sea we came to the mountains. 6. I met the boy as he was leaving the city. 7. Having given the letter to the king the messenger withdrew. 8. Do not buy a horse, but buy a sword. 9. This region is dry; who can find water? 10. Let us go into the fields, that we may see the little lambs.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

1. If he had killed the king, he would have been punished. 2. If the master were here, he would praise that boy and blame this one. 3. If the citizens had delivered up their city, they would

have been killed by the enemy. 4. If I had believed him, I would have come to the gate myself. 5. He would not have been captured if you had not betrayed him. 6. You would not be suffering now if you had not sinned. 7. If my brother had not died I should not now be king. 8. When we had come to the gates of the city, we saw a blind man sitting in the road. 9. If your words had pleased me, I should not have punished you. 10. When we saw the centurion approaching we went to met him.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

1. Why did you not ask him whom he had seen in the city? 2. He did not tell me what he had done. 3. If you had told me what he had said, I should not now be breaking the laws. 4. It is not lawful for us to do this. 5. To-morrow I shall ask him why he has left you here alone. 6. You have not told me how I can do this. 7. Do not ask me what I have suffered. 8. I do not know who is following us. 9. I cannot understand what he said. 10. I do not know where I have left my book.

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

1. Do not be afraid to help this woman. 2. Do not hand over your city to the enemy. 3. If we had caught the thief we should have punished him severely. 4. Let us all praise the man who has delivered the city from the enemy. 5. Do not enter the city alone. 6. I should not have come if you had not asked me. 7. Why will you not tell me what you have done? 8. The king asked me who had brought this letter. 9. Do not send the messenger to your father to-day. 10. I do not know how we can do this.

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

1. He says that the king is dead. 2. I think this is true. 3. Who says that the gates are open? 4. I do not believe he will come. 5. He says that the city will be captured. 6. If he had not said that he would come himself, I would have come to meet you. 7. He would have written himself if I had not told him that I should see you. 8. Come here (*huc*) quickly if you wish to hear the king's words. 9. He answered that he had not given my letter to the woman. 10. I would have given you all my roses if you had come yesterday.

EXERCISE XC.

1. If you will give me the key, I will open the door. 2. Some have gone to the city, others to the fields. 3. If you had ploughed this field yesterday you would not be working to-day. 4. The king says that all the soldiers have fought bravely in the war. 5. He did not tell us why he had said that. 6. Whose book did you give to the master? 7. Do not punish the boy unless he has been naughty. 8. Let us fight bravely for our country at this time. 9. Who can tell me where my sister is? 10. He said that he had often seen my brother.

EXERCISE XCI.

1. Surely you do not believe that this is true? 2. Did you see the king yesterday? 3. You are not going to the city, are you? 4. Have you given my letter to the handmaid? 5. Did he tell you why he had said that? 6. Ask him who is following us. 7. Do you wish to see my sister? 8. Are you not willing to fight for your country? 9. Surely you have often heard me say this? 10. Did you hear the master's voice?

EXERCISE XCII.

1. If the thief had escaped by night, he would not have been caught. 2. Do you know that the city has been delivered up to the enemy? 3. Have you heard that the king is dead? 4. He said that he would punish the naughty boy. 5. They replied that they had not seen my book. 6. Have you not given your brother a sword? 7. I asked him when (his) sister had returned from the city. 8. Who can tell me why we have not taken the city? 9. I do not think he has acted wisely. 10. He says that all the boys are playing in the fields.

EXERCISE XCIII.

1. He set out at the third watch of the night. 2. He returned on the fourth day. 3. We remained six days in the city. 4. If you had set out at the third hour you would have taken the town before the first watch of the night. 5. When they had fought for six hours the soldiers fled. 6. Having left his books in the fields the boy was unable to work. 7. We should have remained with you for six days if we had not been ordered to return to the city at once. 8. Let us proceed to the river, where we shall find six ships. 9. Do you wish me to lend you this book? 10. Have you heard that the king has returned to our city?

EXERCISE XCIV.

1. He sent messengers to the city at the third watch. 2. This man has the power of casting out devils. 3. He sent his son to meet the king. 4. The messenger spoke for many hours in the presence of the queen. 5. Are you going to the city, or will you remain here with me? 6. He ordered the young men to bring in the wounded soldier. 7. Do you think that we shall take the city before the third watch? 8. I do not know who has done this. 9. If you had sent a boy to find my book, I would have thanked you. 10. Having taken the city, the soldiers were led back to their own land.

EXERCISE XCV.

1. He sent men to seek peace. 2. I will send a messenger to carry my letter to the king. 3. The handmaid has gone to warn the queen. 4. If you had sent a shepherd to guard the sheep, I should not have lost my lamb. 5. The disciples were sent to heal the sick. 6. Why are you idle? You ought to be working. 7. Seizing his sword, he killed the king. 8. He said that the soldiers had returned to the city at the third hour. 9. Will you swear that you will be faithful to the king? 10. I will go before you to lead you to the river.

EXERCISE XCVI.

1. You must not fight. 2. I must set out at once. 3. You must seek peace to-day.* 4. We resisted the enemy for many hours. 5. These boys must be praised by all. 6. We must all watch and pray. 7. We must not blame this girl. 8. If you had guarded the gates, the city would not have been captured. 9. Do not set out without me. 10. Have you seen the book which I lent your brother?

EXERCISE XCVII.

1. Go out into the fields to play. 2. I have come to give you an answer. 3. This boy is worthy of praise. 4. If you had found my horse, I would have given you a reward. 5. Why did you deny that you had seen my book? 6. How many roses did the queen give you yesterday? 7. Has this man the power of healing the

* This sentence must be turned passively before it can be translated into Latin: **peace must be sought to-day by you** (*dative*); similarly, sentence 7 becomes: **this girl must not be blamed by us** (*dative*). The agent after a gerund or gerundive is usually put in the dative case.

sick ? 8. We must return to the city at once. 9. Why did you order the slave to give the key of the gate to me ? 10. He sent men to kill the king's son.

EXERCISE XCVIII.

1. This book is so long that I cannot read it.* 2. He was so tired that he could not work. 3. If you had gone to the city yesterday, you would have seen my brother. 4. We must not leave our books in the field. 5. Do not return home without me. 6. Let us all praise the master's wise words. 7. This soldier is so brave that all his enemies fear him. 8. I cannot understand why you have done this. 9. I asked him what he had seen in the city. 10. The girl is so timid that she is afraid of everything.

EXERCISE XCIX.

1. He is not worthy to be king.† 2. He sent men to seek peace.† 3. I am not the sort of man to fear death. 4. Is your brother worthy to be a soldier ? 5. I do not know why he has fled from the country. 6. Why did you leave the little lambs in the field ? 7. I will send a messenger to warn the king. 8. He said that he had never seen the sea. 9. He is so wise that everyone praises him. 10. He did this in order to help his mother.

EXERCISE C.

1. The soldiers begged the king to escape from the city.‡ 2. I asked him not (*ne*) to follow me. 3. The handmaid begged the queen to help the wretched slave. 4. When they had come to the river they found six ships. 5. If you had told me this I should never have believed you. 6. Why did you not ask the messenger to show you the way ? 7. I must return to the city immediately to see my brother. 8. Have you asked the slave to open the gate ? 9. We begged the shepherd to heal the little lamb. 10. The king ordered the soldiers to fight bravely for their country.

* For clauses of result, see page 117 (iii.).
† See page 116, Adjectival clauses.
‡ For Indirect Command, see page 116.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	= ablative.	*part.*	= participle.
acc.	= accusative.	*pass.*	= passive.
adj.	= adjective.	*perf.*	= perfect.
adv.	= adverb.	*pers.*	= person.
c.	= common gender.	*pl.*	= plural.
comp.	= comparative.	*prep.*	= preposition.
conj.	= conjunction.	*pres.*	= present.
f.	= feminine.	*pron.*	= pronoun.
m.	= masculine.	*superl.*	= superlative.
n.	= noun.	*v.*	= verb.
neut.	= neuter.	*v. dep.*	= verb deponent.

Numerals indicate the declension of nouns and conjugation of verbs. Long vowels are marked (-)—*e.g.*, amāre.

A

a, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, by, away from.
abeo, ii, itum, (4), to go away, depart.
abnego, (1), to deny.
abscondo, di, ditum, (3), to hide.
accēdo, cessi, cessum, (3), to come, approach.
accendo, di, sum, (3), to kindle.
acceptābilis, e, *adj.*, acceptable.
accipio, cēpi, ceptum, (3), to receive, take.
ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, at, unto, for.
addūco, xi, ctum, (3), to bring.
adesse, *pres. infinitive of* **adsum.**
adhuc, *adv.*, still.
adjutōrium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, help, aid.
adjuvo, jūvi, jūtum, (1), to help, aid.
admīrābilis, e, *adj.*, admirable.
admiror, (1), *v. dep.*, to wonder.
adōro, (1), to adore.
adsum, adfui, adesse, to be present, to draw nigh.
advenio, vēni, ventum, (4), to come, approach.
adversum, *prep. with acc.*, against.
adversus, *prep. with acc.*, against.
advocāta, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, advocate.
aedifico, (1), to build.
aestimo, (1), to think.
aetas, ātis, *n.* (3) *f.*, age. [lasting.
aeternus, a, m, *adj.*, eternal, ever-
in aeternum, for ever.
affero, attuli, allātum, afferre, to bring nigh.
afflictus, a, um, afflicted.
ager, ri, *n.* (2) *m.*, a field.
agnus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a lamb.
ago, ēgi, actum, (3), to do, render, give, drive.
ait, *3rd pers. pres. of* **aio,** to say.
āla, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a wing.
albus, a, um, *adj.*, white.
alius, a, ud, *adj.*, other, else.
alius . . . alius, one . . . another.
alii . . . alii, some . . . others.
almus, a, um, *adj.*, sweet, dear.
altāre, ris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, an altar.
altus, a, um, *adj.*, high, deep.
amābilis, e, *adj.*, amiable, lovely.
ambo, ae, o, *adj.*, both.
ambulo, (1), to walk.
amīcus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a friend.
amitto, misi, missum, (3), to lose.
amo, (1), to love.
amor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, love.
amplius, *adv. comp.*, yet more.
an, *conj.*, or.
ancilla, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a handmaid.
angelus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, an angel.
anima, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, soul, life.
animātus, a, um, *adj.*, animated.

ante, *prep. with acc.*, before.
antecēdo, cessi, cessum, (3), to go before.
antīquus, a, um, *adj.*, ancient.
aperio, ui, ertum, (4), to open.
apertus, *past part. of* **aperio,** open.
Apostolus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, an Apostle.
appāreo, (2), to appear.
apprehendo, di, sum, (3), to take, lay hold of. [nigh.
appropinquo, (1), to approach, draw
apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, with, among.
aqua, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, water.
arbitror, (1) *v. dep.*, to think.
arbor, oris, *n.* (3) *f.*, a tree.
arca, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, an ark.
ardens, *pres. part. of* **ardeo,** burning.
ardeo, arsi, arsum, (2), to burn, glow.
āridus, a, um, *adj.*, dry, withered.
aro, (1), to plough.
arōma, atis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, sweet spice.
arripio, pui, reptum, (3), to seize.
ascendo, di, sum, (3), to ascend, go up.
aspergo, si, sum, (3), to sprinkle.
aspicio, pexi, pectum, (3), to look, see.
assisto, stiti, (3), to stand by, be present.
assūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, (3), to assume, take up.
at, *conj.*, but.
atque, *conj.*, and.
auctor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, an author.
audax, dācis, *adj.*, bold, audacious.
audeo, ausus sum, (2), *v. semi-dep.*, to dare.
audio, (4), to hear.
aureus, a, um, *adj.*, golden.
auris, is, *n.* (3) *f.*, an ear.
ausus, *past part. of* **audeo,** having dared.
aut, *conj.*, or.
autem, *conj.*, but, moreover.
auxilium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, help, aid.
avē, hail!
avis, is, *n.* (3) *f.*, a bird.

B

baptisma, atis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, baptism.
baptīzo, (1), to baptize.
beātus, a, um, *adj.*, blessed.
bellum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, war.
bene, *adv.*, well.
benedīco, xi, ctum, (3), to bless.
benedictio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, benediction.
benedictus, *past part. of* **benedīco,** blessed.
bibo, bibi, bibitum, (3), to drink.
bonus, a, um, *adj.*, good.
brevis, e, *adj.*, short, brief.

C

cado, cecidi, cāsum, (3), to fall, fall down.
caedo, cecīdi, caesum, (3), to strike, kill.
calix, icis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a cup, chalice.
candidus, a, um, *adj.*, white.
canto, (1), to sing.
capio, cēpi, captum, (3), to take, obtain.
caput, capitis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a head.
caro, carnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, flesh.
castellum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a village, town.
castus, a, um, *adj.*, chaste.
Catholicus, a, um, *adj.*, Catholic.
causa, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a cause.
cēdo, cessi, cessum, (3), to give place.
centūrio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a centurion.
cernuus, a, um, *adj.*, bowing down.
Christiānus, a, um, *adj.*, Christian.
Christiānus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a Christian.
Christus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, Christ, the Anointed.
circa, *prep. with acc.*, about, at, in respect of.
circueo, ii, itum, (4), to go about.
circumstantes, those present.
circumsto, steti, (1), to stand round.
cito, *adv.*, quickly.
civis, is, *n.* (*c.*), a citizen.
civitas, ātis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a city.
clāmo, (1), to cry, cry out.
clāmor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a cry.
claudo, si, sum, (3), to shut.
clausus, *past part. of* **claudo,** shut.
clāvis, is, *n.* (3) *f.*, a key.
clāvus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a nail.
coadūno, (1), to unite.
coelestis, e, *adj.*, heavenly. [coeli).
coelum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, heaven (*pl.*

coena, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a supper.
coepērunt, *3rd pers. pl. of perf. of* **coepio,** to begin.
cōgitātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, thought.
cōgito, (1), to think.
cognātus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a kinsman.
cognosco, nōvi, nitum, (3), to know.
comedo, ēdi, ēsum, (3), to eat.
comitātus, us, *n.* (4) *m.*, a company.
commendo, (1), to commend.
commūnio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, communion.
compar, ris, *adj.*, equal.
competenter, *adv.*, fitly.
complaceo, (2), to please.
comprehendo, di, sum, (3), to comprehend, seize.
conceptus, a, um, conceived.
condemno, (1), to condemn.
condo, didi, ditum, (3), to lay up.
Confessor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a Confessor.
confestim, *adv.*, forthwith.
confidentia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, confidence.
confiteor, confessus sum, (2), *v. dep.*, to confess, give praise.
conglorifico, (1), to conglorify.
congrego, (1), to gather together.
consolātrix, īcis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a consoler.
conspectus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, sight.
constituo, ui, ūtum, (3), to set, place, establish, resolve.
consubstantiālis, e, *adj.*, consubstantial.
consuētūdo, inis, *n.* (3) *f.*, custom.
consummātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, consummation.
consummo, (1), to consummate, fulfil.
contra, *prep. with acc.*, against, over against.
conturbo, (1), to disquiet.
conversor, (1), *v. dep.*, to dwell.
conversus, *past part. of* **converto,** turning.
converto, verti, versum, (3), to turn, bring back.
co-opertus, *past part. of* **co-operio,** to clothe.
cōpiōsus, a, um, *adj.*, plenteous.
cor, cordis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, heart.
cōram, *prep. with abl.*, in the presence of, before.
cornu, ūs, *n.* (4) *neut.*, a horn.
corōna, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a crown.
corpus, oris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a body.
cras, *adv.*, to-morrow.
creātus, *past part. of* **creo,** created.
crēdo, didi, ditum, (3), to believe, trust.
creo, (1), to create.
crīmen, inis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, blame, guilt.
crucifīgo, xi, xum, (3), to crucify.
crucifixus, *past part. of* **crucifīgo,** crucified.
crux, crucis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a cross.
cūjus, *genitive of* **quī** *or* **quis,** whose.
culpo, (1), to blame.
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with; *as conj.*, when, since, although.
cūr, *adv.*, why?
cūra, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, care.
cūro, (1), to heal, care for.
custōdia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a watch, guard, defence.
custōdio, (4), to guard, keep, preserve, watch over.
custos, ōdis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a guard, guardian.

D

daemonium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, an evil spirit, demon.
Dāvidicus, a, um, *adj.*, of David.
dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, of, concerning, by.
dēbeo, (2), to owe.
dēbet, he ought.
dēbitor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a debtor.
dēbitum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a debt, trespass.
dedo, dedidi, deditum, (3), to hand over.
dēfectus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, deficiency.
dēfendo, di, sum, (3), to defend.
dēfunctus, *past part. of* **dēfungor,** dead, departed.
deinde, *adv.*, then, thereupon.
deorsum, *adv.*, down.
dēprecātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a prayer, entreaty.
dērelictus, a, um, forsaken.
descendo, di, sum, (3), to descend.
despicio, pexi, pectum, (3), to despise, look down on.
dēsuper, *adv.*, from above.
Deus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, God.
devōtio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, devotion.
dextera, *or* **dextra, ae,** *n.* (1) *f.*, a right hand.

diabolus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, the devil.
dic, *imperative of* **dīco.**
dīco, xi, ctum, (3), to say, tell, call, speak.
dies, ēi, *n.* (5) *m. and f.*, a day.
digitus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a finger.
dignē, *adv.*, worthily.
dignor, (1), *v. dep.*, to vouchsafe.
dignus, a, um, *adj.*, worthy (*followed by abl.*).
dīlectio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, love.
dīlectus, *past part. of* **dīligo,** beloved.
dīligo, lexi, lectum, (3), to love.
dīmitto, mīsi, missum, (3), to dismiss, forgive, release.
dīrigo, rexi, rectum, (3), to direct.
dissensio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a dissension.
dīvido, vīsi, vīsum, (3), to divide.
dīvīnus, a, um, *adj.*, divine.
dīvitiae, ārum, *n. pl.* (1) *f.*, riches.
do, dedi, datum, (1), to give, grant, bestow.
doceo, docui, doctum, (2), to teach.
doctor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a teacher, doctor.
documentum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, teaching, ordinance.
doleo, (2), to grieve, sorrow.
dolor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, grief, sorrow.
domesticus, a, um, *adj.*, belonging to a household.
dominus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a lord.
domus, ūs, *n.* (4) *f.*, a house, home.
dōnec, *conj.*, until.
dōno, (1), to grant.
dōnum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a gift, offering.
dormio, (4), to sleep.
dubito, (1), to hesitate, doubt.
dūco, xi, ctum, (3), to lead.
dulcēdo, dinis, *n.* (3) *f.*, sweetness.
dulcis, e, *adj.*, sweet.
dum, *conj.*, while.
duo, ae, o, *adj.*, two; *dative and abl.*, duōbus, duābus, duōbus.
duodecim, *indeclinable adj.*, twelve.

E

eburneus, a, um, *adj.*, of ivory.
ecce, *interjection*, behold ! lo !
Ecclēsia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, the Church.
edo, ēdi, ēsum, (3), to eat.
efficio, fēci, fectum, (3), to make.
ego, meī, *pers. pron.*, I.
eia, *interjection*, come, pray, ah !
ējicio, jēci, jectum, (3), to cast out.
eleison (*Greek verb*), have mercy on.
ēmitto, mīsi, missum, (3), to send forth.
emo, ēmi, emptum, (3), to buy.
enim, *conj.*, for.
eo, īvi, itum, (4), to go.
epistola, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a letter, epistle.
ergo, *adv.*, therefore, then.
ērigo, rexi, rectum, (3), to lift, raise up.
ēripio, ripui, reptum, (3), to deliver, snatch away.
ero, *future of* **sum,** I shall be.
esse, *infinitive of* **sum,** to be.
esto, *imperative of* **sum,** be.
ēsurio, (4), to be hungry.
et, *conj.*, and, also, even ; **et . . . et,** both . . . and.
etiam, *conj.*, also.
eum, *acc. of* **is,** him.
eundum, *gerund of* **eo.**
ēvangelium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, gospel, good tidings.
ex, *prep. with abl.*, from, out of, beyond.
exalto, (1), to exalt, extol, lift up.
exāmen, inis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, crisis, agony.
exaudio, (4), to hear graciously.
excelsus, a, um, *adj.*, high, highest, most high.
excito, (1), to stir up, awake.
exeo, ii, itum, (4), to go forth, go out.
exercitus, us, *n.* (4) *m.*, army, host.
exilium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, exile.
existimo, (1), to think.
expavesco, pāvi, (3), to be affrighted.
exspecto, (1), to look for, wait for, expect.
exsulto, (1), to exult, rejoice.
extendo, di, sum, (3), to stretch forth.
exul, ulis, *n.* (3) *c.*, an exile.

F

faber, ri, *n.* (2) *m.*, a carpenter.
fābula, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a story, tale, fable.
fac, *imperative of* **facio.**

facies, ēi, *n.* (5) *f.*, face.
facio, feci, factum, (3), to do, make, cause.
factor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a maker.
factum est, it came to pass.
famulus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a servant.
fēlix, īcis, *adj.*, happy.
fer, *imperative of* **fero.** [bring.
fero, tuli, lātum, ferre, to bear, take,
festus, a, um, *adj.*, festive.
fidēlis, e, *adj.*, faithful.
fides, ēi, *n.* (5) *f.*, faith.
fieri, *infinitive of* **fio.**
fīlia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a daughter.
fīlius, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a son (*vocative*, fili).
fīnis, is, *n.* (3) *m.*, an end, border.
fīo, factus sum, fieri, to be done, become, be, come to pass.
firmamentum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, firma-
fixūra, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a print. [ment.
fleo, flēvi, flētum, (2), to weep.
flōs, flōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a flower.
fluctus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, a wave.
flūmen, inis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a river, stream.
fluo, fluxi, fluxum, (3), to flow.
foedus, eris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, covenant.
fores, um, *n. pl.* (3) *f.*, doors.
forte, *adv.*, by chance, haply.
fortis, e, *adj.*, brave, strong.
fovea, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a ditch.
frango, frēgi, fractum, (3), to break.
frāter, tris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a brother.
fretum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, sea, strait, water.
frīgidus, a, um, *adj.*, cold.
fructus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, fruit.
frustrā, *adv.*, in vain.
fugio, fūgi, fugitum, (3), to flee.
fūr, fūris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a thief.
fūror, (1), *v. dep.*, to steal.

G

Galilaea, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, Galilee.
gaudeo, gavīsus sum, (2), *v. semi-dep.*, to rejoice.
gaudium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, joy, gladness.
gavīsus sum, *perf. of* **gaudeo,** I rejoiced.
gemo, ui, itum, (3), to sigh.
genitor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a father.
genitrix, īcis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a mother.
genitus, a, um, begotten. [nation.
gens, gentis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a people,
Gentes, the Gentiles.
genu, ūs, *n.* (4) *neut.*, a knee.
gladius, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a sword.
glōria, ae, *n.* (1), glory.
glōrifico, (1), to glorify.
glōriōsus, a, um, *adj.*, glorious.
gradus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, a step.
grātia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, grace; **grātiae,** thanks; **grātias agere,** to give thanks.

H

habeo, (2), to have.
habito, (1), to live, dwell, abide.
hērēditās, ātis, *n.* (3) *f.*, inheritance, heritage.
Hēva, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, Eve.
hīc, haec, hōc, *demonstrative pron.*, this; *personal pron.*, he, she, it.
hīc, *adv.*, here.
hodiē, *adv.*, to-day.
homo, inis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a man, man.
honor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, honour.
honorābilis, e, *adj.*, honourable.
hōra, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, an hour.
hostia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a victim, host.
hostīlis, e, *adj.*, hostile.
humilis, e, *adj.*, humble.
hyssōpum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, hyssop.

I

ibi, *adv.*, there.
īdem, eadem, idem, *pron.*, the same.
iens, euntis, *pres. part. of* **eo,** going.
igitur, *adv.*, therefore.
ignis, is, *n.* (3) *m.*, fire.
ille, illa, illud, *demonstrative pron.*, that; *personal pron.*, he, she, it.
illūmināti̇o, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, light.
illūmino, (1), to enlighten, illumine.
immaculātus, a, um, *adj.*, immaculate.
immemor, oris, *adj.*, unmindful, forgetful.
immolo, (1), to sacrifice, offer.
impedio, (4), to impede, hinder.
impetus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, force, attack, power.
impius, a, um, *adj.*, impious, wicked.

implōro, (1), to implore. [impose.
impono, posui, positum, (3), to lay,
in, *prep. with acc.*, into, on to, upon, unto, for; *prep. with abl.*, in, within, among, on. [tion.
incarnātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, incarna-
incensum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, incense.
incipio, cēpi, ceptum, (3), to begin.
inclīno, (1), to incline.
incrēdulus, a, um, *adj.*, faithless.
inde, *adv.*, thence, from there, then, thereupon.
indignus, a, um, *adj.*, unworthy (*followed by abl.*).
ineo, ii, itum, (4), to enter.
infēlix, līcis, *adj.*, unhappy.
inferi, ōrum, *n. pl.* (2) *m.*, hell.
infero, intuli, illātum, inferre, to put in.
inferre, *infinitive of* **infero**, to put in.
infirmitas, ātis, *n.* (3) *f.*, sickness.
infirmus, a, um, *adj.*, sick, infirm.
infundo, fūdi, fūsum, (3), to pour in, infuse.
inimīcus, a, um, *adj.*, hostile, unfriendly.
inimīcus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, an enemy.
iniquitas, ātis, *n.* (3) *f.*, iniquity.
iniquus, a, um, *adj.*, unjust, wicked.
initium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a beginning.
injūria, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, an injury.
innumerābilis, e, *adj.*, innumerable, countless.
insignis, e, *adj.*, singular, eminent.
insuffio, (1), to breathe upon.
intemerātus, a, um, *adj.*, undefiled.
intendens, *pres. part. of* **intendo**, attentive.
intercēdo, cessi, cessum, (3), to intercede.
interficio, fēci, fectum, (3), to kill, slay, put to death.
intra, *prep. with acc.*, within.
intro, (1), to enter, go into.
introeo, ii, itum, (4), to enter, go in.
intueor, tuitus sum, (2), *v. dep.*, to see, gaze at, behold.
intus, *adv.*, within.
invenio, vēni, ventum, (4), to find.
invicem, *adv.*, in turn, among one another, one another.
inviolātus, a, um, *adj.*, inviolate.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *definitive pron.*, self; *personal pron.*, he, she, it.
īra, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, anger.
iste, ista, istud, *demonstrative pron.*, that, this; *personal pron.*, he, she, it.
itaque, *conj.*, therefore, and so, accordingly.
iterum, *adv.*, again.

J

jaceo, (2), to lie.
Jacōbus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, James.
jam, *adv.*, now, already.
jānua, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a gate, door.
jejūno, (1), to fast.
Jerūsalem, *n. indeclinable*, Jerusalem.
Jēsus, ū, *n. m.*, Jesus.
Johannes, is, *n.* (3) *m.*, John.
jubeo, jussi, jussum, (2), to order, bid, command.
jubilātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, jubilation.
Jūdaeus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a Jew.
Jūdas, ae, *n.* (1) *m.*, Judas.
jūdicium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, judgment.
jūdico, (1), to judge.
jūro, (1), to swear.
jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, *n.* (3 *and* 2) *neut.*, an oath.
justitia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, justice.
justus, a, um, *adj.*, just.
juvenis, is, *n.* (3) *m.*, a young man.
juventus, tūtis, *n.* (3) *f.*, youth.
juxtā, *prep. with acc.*, nigh.

K

Kyrie (*Greek noun*), O Lord.

L

labium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a lip.
labor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, work, labour.
labōro, (1), to work, labour.
lacryma, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a tear.
laetifico, (1), to make glad.
laetitia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, joy, gladness.
laetor, (1), *v. dep.*, to rejoice, be glad.
laetus, a, um, *adj.*, glad, joyful.
lapis, idis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a stone.

lātus, a, um, *adj.*, wide, broad.
latus, eris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a side.
laudābilis, e, *adj.*, to be praised.
laudātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, praise.
laudo, (1), to praise.
laus, laudis, *n.* (3) *f.*, praise. [wash.
lavo, lāvi, lautum *or* **lōtum,** (1), to
lectus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a bed, couch.
lego, lēgi, lectum, (3), to read, pick, choose.
lepra, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, leprosy.
leprōsus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a leper.
levo, (1), to lift up.
lex, lēgis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a law.
liber, bri, *n.* (2) *m.*, a book.
lībero, (1), to deliver, set free.
licet, *v. impersonal,* (2), it is permitted.
ligo, (1), to bind.
lingua, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a tongue.
locus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a place.
longitūdo, dinis, *n.* (3) *f.*, length.
longus, a, um, *adj.*, long.
loquor, locūtus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to speak, declare.
lūceo, luxi, (2), to shine.
lūcidus, a, um, *adj.*, bright.
lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, (3), to play.
lūmen, inis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, light.
lux, lūcis, *n.* (3) *f.*, light; **prīmā lūce,** at dawn.

M

magister, ri, *n.* (2) *m.*, a master.
magnus, a, um, *adj.*, great.
magus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a wise man.
mājor, mājus, *adj. comp. of* **magnus,** greater.
male, *adv.*, ill, evilly, badly.
maledictus, a, um, *adj.*, cursed.
malefactor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a malefactor.
malum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, evil.
malus, a, um, *adj.*, bad, evil, wicked.
mandātum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a commandment.
mando, (1), to command, charge.
manducō, (1), to eat.
māne, *adv.*, in the morning.
maneo, mansi, mansum, (2), to remain, abide.
manus, ūs, *n.* (4) *f.*, a hand.
mare, is, *n.* (3) *neut.*, the sea.
Maria, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, Mary.
martyr, yris, *n.* (3) *c.*, a martyr.
māter, tris, *n.* (3) *f.*, a mother.
mātūtīnus, a, um, *adj.*, morning.
mē, *acc. of* **ego,** me.
medius, a, um, *adj.*, middle, in the midst of.
memor, oris, *adj.*, mindful.
memoria, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, memory, remembrance, a memorial.
memoror, (1), *v. dep.*, to remember, be mindful.
mens, mentis, *n.* (3) *f.*, mind, soul.
mensis, is, *n.* (3) *m.*, month.
mercēs, cēdis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a reward, recompense.
metus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, fear. [mine.
meus, a, um, *possessive adj.*, my,
mihi, *dative of* **ego,** to me.
mīles, itis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a soldier.
minister, tri, *n.* (2) *m.*, a servant.
ministro, (1), to minister.
miser, era, erum, *adj.*, miserable, wretched.
misereor, sertus sum, (2), *v. dep.*, to have mercy, to pity (*followed by genitive or dative*).
misericordia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, mercy, pity.
misericors, dis, *adj.*, merciful.
mītis, e, *adj.*, gentle.
mitto, mīsi, missum, (3), to send, cast, put.
modo, *adv.*, now, only.
moneo, (2), to advise, warn.
mons, tis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a mountain, hill.
monstro, (1), to show, point out.
monumentum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a tomb, sepulchre, grave.
morior, mortuus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to die.
mors, tis, *n.* (3) *f.*, death.
mortuus, a, um, *adj.*, dead.
Moyses, is, *n.* (3) *m.*, Moses.
mulier, eris, *n.* (3) *f.*, a woman.
multus, a, um, *adj.*, much, many.
mundo, (1), to cleanse, make clean.
mundus, a, um, *adj.*, clean, pure.
mundus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, world, universe, mankind.
mūnus, eris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a gift, present.

N

narro, (1), to narrate, tell.
nascor, nātus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to be born.
nātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a nation.
nātus, a, um, *past part. of* **nascor**, born.
nāvis, is, *n.* (3) *f.*, a ship.
Nazarēnus, a, um, *adj.*, of Nazareth, Nazarene.
nē, *conj.*, lest, that not (*followed by subjunctive*).
nec, *conj.*, and not, neither, nor.
negligentia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a failing.
nēmo, inis, *n.* (3) *c.*, no one, nobody, no man.
neque, *conj.* (*same as* **nec**), neither, nor, and not.
nescio, (4), to know not.
nihil, *n.*, *indeclinable*, nothing, naught.
nihilum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, nothing, naught.
nimis, *adv.*, exceedingly, too much.
nisi, *conj.*, unless, if not, except.
nix, nivis, *n.* (3) *f.*, snow.
nōbis, *dative and abl. of* **nos**, to us, etc.
nocte, *abl. of* **nox**, by night.
nōli, *imperative of* **nōlo**, do not.
nōlo, nolui, nolle, to be unwilling.
nōmen, inis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a name.
nondum, *adv.*, not yet.
nonne, *interrogative adv.*, whether not? not? (*indicating that the answer "yes" is expected*).
nōs, *pers. pron.*, we.
nosco, nōvi, nōtum, (3), to get to know, know.
noster, tra, trum, *possessive adj.*, our, ours.
nōti, ōrum, *n. pl.* (2) *m.*, acquaintances.
nōvi, *perf. of* **nosco** (*used with pres. meaning*), I know.
nox, ctis, *n.* (3) *f.*, night.
nūbes, is, *n.* (3) *f.*, cloud.
num, *interrogative adv.*, whether? surely not? (*indicating that the answer "no" is expected*).
numquid, *interrogative adv.*, whether? surely not? (*indicating that the answer "no" is expected*).
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nuntio, (1), to announce.
nuntius, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a messenger.
nurus, us, *n.* (4) *f.*, a daughter-in-law.

O

ob, *prep. with acc.*, through, on account of.
oblātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, an oblation, offering.
observo, (1), to mark, observe.
obstupesco, stupui, (3), to be amazed.
obumbro, (1), to overshadow.
obviam, *adv.*, in the way.
obviam esse, to meet.
obviam īre, to go to meet.
obviam venīre, to come to meet.
occīdo, cīdi, cīsum, (3), to kill.
occurro, curri, cursum, (3), to meet, go to meet.
octo, *adj. indeclinable*, eight.
oculus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, an eye.
ōdērunt, *3rd pers. pl. of* **ōdi**, they hate.
ōdi, ōdisse, *v. defective*, to hate (*only used in the perf. tenses*).
offendo, di, sum, (3), to dash, stumble.
offensio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*,
offero, obtuli, oblātum, offerre, to offer.
omnipotens, ntis, *adj.*, omnipotent, almighty.
omnis, e, *adj.*, all, every.
oportet, uit, (2), *v. impersonal*, it behoves; must, ought.
optimus, a, um, *adj. superl. of* **bonus**, best.
opus, eris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, work.
ōrātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, prayer.
oriens, tis, *n.* (3) *m.*, the Orient, east.
orior, ortus sum, (4), *v. dep.*, to rise, arise.
orno, (1), to adorn, deck.
ōro, (1), to pray, entreat.
ortus, a, um, *past part. of* **orior**, risen.
ōs, ōris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a mouth, face.
ostendo, di, sum, (3), to show.
ostium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a gate, door.
ōtiōsus, a, um, *adj.*, idle.

ōtium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, leisure, idleness.
ovis, is, *n.* (3) *f.*, a sheep.

P

pācifico, (1), to make peaceful, pacify.
pando, pandi, pansum, (3), to open.
pānis, is, *n.* (3) *m.*, bread; *pl.*, loaves.
parābola, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a parable.
paralyticus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a paralytic, a paralysed man.
paro, (1), to prepare, provide.
pars, partis, *n.* (3) *f.*, part, quarter.
parātus, a, um, *adj.*, ready.
parvus, a, um, *adj.*, little, small.
passio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, passion.
passus, a, um, *past part. of* **patior,** having suffered.
pastor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a shepherd, pastor.
pater, ris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a father.
paterfamilias, patrisfamilias, *n.* (3) *m.*, the goodman of the house.
patior, passus sum, (3), to suffer, endure.
patria, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, native land.
patriarcha, ae, *n.* (1) *m.*, patriarch.
Paulus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, Paul.
pauper, eris, *adj.*, poor.
pax, pācis, *n.* (3) *f.*, peace.
peccātor, ōris, *n.* (3) *c.*, a sinner.
peccātum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, sin.
pecco, (1), to sin.
pecūnia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, money.
pendeo, pependi, pensum, (2), to hang (*intransitive*).
per, *prep. with acc.*, through, by, across.
perdo, didi, ditum, (3), to lose, destroy.
perdūco, duxi, ductum, (3), to bring.
perfodio, fōdi, fossum, (3), to break open.
perforo, (1), to pierce.
pergo, perrexi, perrectum, (3), to go, proceed.
perhibeo, (2), to render, bear.
periculum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, danger, peril.
peto, īvi, ītum, (3), to seek, ask.
petra, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a rock, stone.
Petrus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, Peter.
phantasma, atis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a phantasm.
Pharisaeus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a Pharisee.
Pilātus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, Pilate.
pinnāculum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a pinnacle.
piscis, is, *n.* (3) *m.*, a fish.
pius, a, um, *adj.*, good, pious, tender, loving.
placeo, (2), to please.
plebs, plēbis, *n.* (3) *f.*, people.
plēnus, a, um, *adj.*, full (*followed by abl.*).
pōno, posui, positum, (3), to put, place, set, lay down.
pontifex, ficis, *n.* (3) *m.*, High Priest.
populus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, people.
porta, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a gate, door.
porto, (1), to carry.
possideo, sēdi, sessum, (2), to possess.
possum, potui, posse, to be able, can.
post, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind.
postea, *adv.*, afterwards.
potens, tis, *adj.*, powerful.
potestas, ātis, *n.* (3) *f.*, power, dominion.
potius, *comp. adv.*, rather, preferably.
pōto, potāvi, potātum *and* **pōtum,** (1), to drink.
pōtum, *supine of* **pōto,** to drink.
prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, for.
praecēdo, cessi, cessum, (3), to go before, precede.
praecipio, cēpi, ceptum, (3), to command, enjoin.
praecipuē, *adv.*, especially.
praedicandus, a, um, to be extolled.
praedico, (1), to preach, extol.
praeeo, ii, itum, (4), to go in advance.
praegustātus, a, um, tasted beforehand.
praeparo, (1), to prepare.
praesidium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, protection.
praesto, stiti, stitum, (1), to give, bestow, offer.
praevaleo, (2), to prevail.
precor, (1), *v. dep.*, to pray.
primus, a, um, *adj.*, first.
principium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a beginning.

prius, *adv.*, before.
pro, *prep. with abl.*, for, for the sake of, according to, on behalf of.
prōcēdo, cessi, cessum, (3), to proceed, come forth.
prōcido, cidi, (3), to fall down.
prōfĭcio, fēci, fectum, (3), to assist, help, profit, advance.
profundum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, depth.
promissio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a promise.
prophēta, ae, *n.* (1) *m.*, a prophet.
prophēto, (1), to prophesy.
propitiātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, propitiation.
propositio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, proposition, show.
proprius, a, um, *adj.*, his, her, or their own, belonging to.
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, through.
propterea, *adv.*, therefore.
prōtego, texi, tectum, (3), to protect.
proximus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a neighbour.
prūdens, tis, *adj.*, prudent.
prūdentia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, prudence, wisdom.
psalmus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a psalm.
puer, eri, *n.* (2) *m.*, a boy, child, servant.
pugno, (1), to fight.
pulcher, chra, chrum, *adj.*, fair, beautiful.
pulso, (1), to knock.
pūnio, (4), to punish.
pūpilla, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, pupil of the eye, apple of the eye.
pūrus, a, um, *adj.*, pure.
puto, (1), to think.

Q

quadrāginta, *indeclinable adj.*, forty.
quaero, quaesīvi, sītum, (3), to seek, ask, inquire.
quaesumus, we beseech, entreat.
quālis, e, *adj.*, such as, as, what manner of.
quam, *adv.*, how, than.
quando, *adv.*, when?
quārē, *adv.*, why? wherefore?
quartus, a, um, *adj.*, fourth.
quasi, *adv.*, as if, as, as it were.
-que, *conj., enclitic*, and.
quem, *acc. of* **quī**, whom.
quī, quae, quod, *relative pron.*, who, which, that.
quia, *conj.*, that, for, because.
quīcunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, *relative pron.*, whosoever, whatsoever.
quid, *adverbial pron.*, why? *neut. of* **quis**, what?
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *indefinite pron.*, some, certain, a certain man.
quinque, *indeclinable adj.*, five.
quintus, a, um, *adj.*, fifth.
quippe, *adv. and conj.*, for, in fact.
quis, quid, *interrogative pron.*, who? which? what? *indefinite pron.* (*after* **si, nisi, num, ne**), any, anyone.
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam, *pron.*, anyone.
quisquis, quaequae, quidquid (quicquid), *indefinite relative pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever.
quŏ, *adv.*, whither?
quod, *conj.*, that, because.
quodcunque, *neut. of* **quīcunque**, whatsoever.
quŏmodo, *adv.*, how? in what manner?
quoniam, *conj.*, that, for, since.
quot, *adv.*, how many?
quotidiānus, a, um, *adj.*, daily.
quotquot, *indeclinable adj.*, as many as.

R

rapio, pui, ptum, (3), to seize.
recēdo, cessi, cessum, (3), to depart, withdraw.
recipio, cēpi, ceptum, (3), receive, [take.
recumbo, cubui, (3), to recline (at table).
redemptio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, redemption.
redemptor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a redeemer.
redeo, ii, itum, (4), to go back, return.
refugium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, refuge.
rēgīna, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a queen.
regio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a region, land.
regno, (1), to reign.

regnum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a kingdom, realm.
rego, rexi, rectum, (3), to rule, govern, direct.
regredior, regressus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to return, go back.
relinquo, līqui, lictum, (3), to leave, abandon.
remissio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, remission, [forgiveness.
remitto, mīsi, missum, (3), to send back, remit, forgive.
renuntio, (1), to announce.
repleo, plēvi, plētum, (3), to fill.
requies, ētis, *n.* (3) *f.*, rest, repose.
requiesco, quiēvi, ētum, (3), to rest, repose.
requīro, quīsīvi, sītum, (3), to seek.
rēs, reī, *n.* (5) *f.*, a thing, matter, business.
resisto, stiti, (3), to resist (*followed by dative*).
respicio, pexi, pectum, (3), to regard, look upon, look.
resplendeo, (2), to shine.
respondeo, di, sum, (2), to answer.
responsum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, an answer.
resurgo, surrexi, surrectum, (3), to rise again.
resurrectio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, resurrection.
retineo, tinui, tentum, (2), to retain, keep.
revēlo, (1), to reveal.
revolūtus, a, um, *past part. of* revolvo, rolled back.
revolvo, vi, volūtum, (3), to roll back.
rex, rēgis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a king.
rītus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, a rite.
rōbur, ōris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, strength.
rosa, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a rose.
rursum, *adv.*, again.

S

sabbata, ōrum, *n. pl.* (2) *neut.*, a week.
sabbatum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, the sabbath day, Saturday.
sacerdos, dōtis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a priest.
sacrificium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a sacrifice.
saeculum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, an age, eternity; **a saeculo,** from all time; **in saecula,** for ever, unto ages.
saepe, *adv.*, often.
salio, salui, saltum, (4), to leap, bound, spring.
salus, ūtis, *n.* (3) *f.*, salvation, health.
salūtāre, is, *n.* (3) *neut.*, salvation.
salūto, (1), to greet, salute.
salvātor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, saviour.
salvē, welcome! hail!
salvus, a, um, *adj.*, safe, whole, saved.
Samaritānus, a, um, *adj.*, Samaritan.
sanctus, a, um, *adj.*, holy, saintly.
sanctus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a saint.
sanguis, inis, *n.* (3) *m.*, blood.
sāno, (1), to heal.
sapiens, tis, *adj.*, wise.
sapientia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, wisdom.
sata, ōrum, *n. pl.* (2) *neut.*, fields, cornfields.
scabellum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a footstool.
scientia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, knowledge.
scio, (4), to know.
scitōte, know ye.
scrība, ae, *n.* (1) *m.*, a scribe.
scrībo, scripsi, scriptum, (3), to write.
scriptūra, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, scripture.
sēcum, with himself.
secundum, *prep. with acc.*, according to, after.
secundus, a, um, *adj.*, second.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sedeo, sēdi, sessum, (2), to sit, rest.
sēdes, is, *n.* (3) *f.*, a seat, throne, place.
sēmen, inis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, seed.
sēmetipsum, *reflexive pron. acc. 3rd pers. m.*, himself.
semper, *adv.*, always.
sempiternus, a, um, eternal, everlasting.
sensus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, sense.
sentio, sensi, sensum, (4), to feel, think.
seorsum, *adv.*, apart.
sēparo, (1), to separate.
sepelio, līvi, pultum, (4), to bury.
sepultus, a, um, *past part. of* sepelio, buried.

sequor, secūtus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to follow.
sermo, ōnis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a speech, word.
sēro, *adv.*, too late, late.
servio, (4), to serve (*followed by dative*).
servo, (1), to save, preserve, observe, keep.
servus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a slave, servant.
sex, *indeclinable adj.*, six.
sī, *conj.*, if.
sī quis, if anyone.
sīc, *adv.*, so.
sīcut, *adv.*, as, as also, how.
signo, (1), to sign.
signum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a sign, miracle.
similis, e, *adj.*, like (*followed by genitive or dative*).
simul, *adv.*, together, at the same time.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
sino, sīvi, situm, (3), to suffer, allow, permit.
socrus, us, *n.* (4) *f.*, a mother-in-law.
sōl, is, *n.* (3) *m.*, the sun.
sōlum, *adv.*, only, alone.
sōlus, a, um, *adj.*, alone.
solūtus, a, um, *past part. of* **solvo,** freed, loosed.
solvo, vi, lūtus, (3), to loose, set free, dissolve.
somnium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a dream.
somnus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, sleep; *pl.* dreams.
sonus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a sound.
soror, ōris, *n.* (3) *f.*, a sister.
speculum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a mirror.
spēro, (1), to hope, hope for.
spēs, ēi, *n.* (5) *f.*, hope.
spīca, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, an ear of corn.
spīna, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a thorn.
spīrituālis, e, *adj.*, spiritual.
spīritus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, breath, spirit, wind; **Sanctus Spīritus,** the Holy Ghost.
statim, *adv.*, immediately, forthwith.
statuo, ui, ūtum, (3), to set, place.
stella, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a star.
sto, steti, statum, (1), to stand.
stola, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a robe.
stupefactus, a, um, *adj.*, astonished, amazed.
stupeo, (2), to be astounded, astonished.
stupor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, astonishment.
sub, *prep. with acc.*, to; *prep. with abl.*, under.
subditus, *past part. of* **subdo,** subject, subjected.
subdo, didi, ditum, (3), to subdue, subject.
suffrāgium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, prayer.
summitto, misi, missum, (3), to let down.
super, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, upon, above, over, for, because of, at, besides, beyond.
supero, (1), to overcome, conquer.
supplementum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, supply.
supplex, icis, *adj.*, suppliant.
supplex, icis, *n.* (3) *c.*, a suppliant.
supra, *prep. with acc.*, over, above.
surgo, surrexi, surrectum, (3), to rise.
suscipio, cēpi, ceptum, (3), receive, take, undertake, protect.
suscito, (1), to raise up.
suspīro, (1), to sigh.
suus, a, um, *possessive adj.*, his, his own, her, its, their.

T

tabernāculum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a tabernacle, dwelling.
tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless, but, however.
tango, tetigi, tactum, (3), to touch.
tantum, *adv.*, only.
tantus, a, um, *adj.*, so great, so much.
tē, *acc. of* **tū,** thee.
tectum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a roof, dwelling.
tēcum, with thee.
tēgula, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a tile.
templum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a temple.
tempus, oris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, time.
tenebrae, ārum, *n. pl.* (1) *f.*, darkness.
teneo, ui, tentum, (2), to hold, keep.
tentātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, temptation.
tentātor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a tempter.
tento, (1), to tempt.
terminus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, end

terra, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, earth, land.
terreo, (2), to terrify, frighten.
tertius, a, um, *adj.*, third.
testāmentum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a testament, covenant.
testimōnium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, testimony, witness.
tetigi, *perf. of* **tango,** I touched.
thronus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a throne.
tibi, *dative of* **tū,** to thee.
timeo, (2), to fear, be afraid.
tollo, sustuli, sublātum, (3), to lift, raise, take away.
tōtus, a, um, *adj.*, whole, all (*genitive* **tōtius,** *dative* **tōti**).
trādo, didi, ditum, (3), to deliver, betray.
traho, traxi, tractum, (3), to draw.
trans, *prep. with acc.*, across.
transeo, ii, itum, (4), to pass, cross over.
transfigūro, (1), to transfigure.
trēs, tria, *adj.*, three.
trīduum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a space of three days.
trīnus, a, um, *adj.*, trine, threefold.
tristis, e, *adj.*, sad.
tū, tuī, *personal pron.*, thou.
tunc, *adv.*, then.
turba, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a crowd, multitude, company.
turbo, (1), to trouble.
turris, is, *n.* (3) *f.*, a tower.
tuus, a, um, *possessive adj.*, thy, thine.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where.
ullus, a, um, *adj.*, any (*genitive* **ullīus,** *dative* **ulli**).
umbra, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, shade, shadow.
unde, *adv.*, whence, from where.
undecim, *indeclinable adj.*, eleven.
ungo, unxi, unctum, (3), to anoint.
ūnicus, a, um, *adj.*, sole, only, sole-begotten.
ūnigenitus, a, um, *adj.*, only-begotten.
ūnitas, ātis, *n.* (3) *f.*, unity.
ūniversus, a, um, *adj.*, all, whole.
ūnus, a, um, *adj.*, one, same (*genitive* **ūnīus,** *dative* **ūni**).
unusquisque, *adj.*, each.
usque, *adv.*, on, right on, continually, even, henceforward.
ut, *conj. with indicative,* when, as.
ut, *conj. with subjunctive,* that, so that, in order that.
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *pron.*, both.
utique, *adv.*, verily, certainly.

V

vādo, si, (3), to go.
valdē, *adv.*, very, exceedingly.
vallis, is, *n.* (3) *f.*, a valley.
vānum, in vain.
vānus, a, um, *adj.*, vain.
varius, a, um, *adj.*, divers, various, manifold.
vās, vāsis, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a vessel.
vello, vulsi *and* **velli, vulsum,** (3), to pluck, pull.
vēlox, ōcis, *adj.*, swift.
veneror, (1), *v. dep.*, venerate, worship.
venio, vēni, ventum, (3), to come.
venter, ris, *n.* (3) *m.*, womb, body.
verbum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a word.
vērē, *adv.*, truly, in truth.
vēritas, ātis, *n.* (3) *f.*, truth.
vērō, *conj.*, but.
vērus, a, um, *adj.*, true.
vester, tra, trum, *possessive adj.*, your, yours.
vestimentum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, raiment, clothes.
vexo, (1), to trouble, vex.
via, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, way, journey, road.
video, vīdi, vīsum, (2), to see, look.
videor, vīsus sum, (2) (*passive of* **video**), to seem, appear.
vigilia, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a watch; *pl.*, the night watches.
vigilo, (1), to watch.
vinco, vīci, victum, (3), to conquer, overcome.
violo, (1), to break, violate.
vir, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a man.
virgo, ginis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a virgin.
virtus, ūtis, *n.* (3) *f.*, virtue, strength, courage.
virtūtes, um, *n. pl.* (*of* **virtus**) *f.*, miracles.

vis, 2*nd pers. sing. of* **volo,** thou dost wish.
viscera, um, *n. pl.* (3) *neut.*, bowels, heart.
vīsibilis, e, *adj.*, visible.
vīsio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, a vision.
vīsito, (1), to visit.
vīta, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, life.
vivifico, (1), to quicken, give life to.
vīvo, vixi, victum, (3), to live.
vīvus, a, um, *adj.*, living, alive.
voco, (1), to call, summon.
volo, volui, velle, to be willing, to wish.
volo, (1), to fly.
voluntas, ātis, *n.* (3) *f.*, will.
vōs, vestrī, *personal pron.*, you.
vox, vōcis, *n.* (3) *f.*, voice.
vulnus, eris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a wound.
vult, 3*rd pers. sing. of* **volo,** he wishes.
vultis, 2*nd pers. pl. of* **volo,** you wish.
vultus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, a face.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

(The parts of verbs and genitives of nouns, etc., will be found in Latin-English vocabulary.)

A

able, to be, possum.
about, de.
on account of, propter.
across, trans.
act, ago.
adore, adóro.
adorn, orno.
advise, móneo.
afraid, to be, tímeo.
after, post.
again, íterum; rursus.
alive, vivus.
all, univérsus; omnis.
almighty, omnípotens.
alone, solus.
altar, altáre.
always, semper.
am, sum.
amazed, attónitus; stupefáctus.
amiable, amábilis.
and, et.
angel, ángelus.
anger, ira.
announce, núntio; annúntio.
answer, respónsum.
apostle, apóstolus.
apple, pomum.
approach, appropínquo.
arise, surgo; órior.
army, exércitus.
arrive, advénio.
as, sicut.
ascend, ascéndo.
at once, statim.
attack (*n.*), ímpetus.
attack, to, oppúgno, (1).
author, auctor.

B.

bad, malus.
badly, male.
baptize, baptízo.
be, to, esse.
be here, adésse.
beautiful, pulcher.
because, quia; quod.
before, ante.
beg, óbsecro; oro.
beginning, princípium.
believe, credo.
beloved, diléctus.
beneath, sub.
best, óptimus.
betray, prodo.
better, mélior.
bid, júbeo.
bird, avis.
blame, to, culpo.
bless, benedíco.
blessed, benedíctus.
blind, caecus.
bold, audax.
book, liber.
boy, puer.
brave, fortis.
bravely, fórtiter.
bread, panis.
break, víolo.
bright, lúcidus.
bring, fero; porto.
bring in, inféro.
broad, latus.
brother, frater.
build, aedífico.
bury, sepélio.
buy, emo.
by, a *or* ab.

C.

call, voco.
can, possum.
capture, cápio.
carry, porto.
cast out, ejício.
catch, capio.
centurion, centūrio.
chance, by, forte.

child, puer.
children, púeri; líberi.
Christ, Christus.
Christian, Christiánus.
citizen, civis.
city, cívitas; urbs.
cleanse, mundo.
clothed, co-opértus.
clothing, vestiméntum.
come, vénio.
come to meet, occúrro.
condemn, condémno; damno.
confess, confíteor.
confessor, conféssor.
country, terra; régio.
  native country, pátria.
create, creo.
creator, creátor.
cross (*n.*), crux.
cross, to, tránseo.
crowd, turba.
crown, coróna.
cry (*n.*), clamor.
cry, to, clamo.
cry (weep), fléo.

D.

daily, quotidiánus.
danger, perículum.
dare, aúdeo.
darkness, ténebrae.
daughter, fília.
day, dies.
daylight, lux; prima lux.
dead, mórtuus; defúnctus.
death, mors.
deep, profúndus; altus.
defend, deféndo.
deliver, líbero.
deny, nego; ábnego.
depart, discédo; abeo.
descend, descéndo.
despise, despício.
destroy, déleo.
devil, daemon.
die, mórior.
disciple, discípulus.
disquiet, contúrbo.
do, fácio; ago.
door, porta.
drive, ago.
dry, áridus.
dwell, hábito.

E.

earth, terra.
eleven, úndecim.
end, términus; finis.
enemy, inimícus; hostis.
enlighten, illúmino.
enter, intro; íneo; ingrédior.
escape, effúgio; fúgio.
eternal, aetérnus.
evil, malum.
exalt, exálto.
eye, óculus.

F.

face, fácies; vultus.
fair, pulcher.
faith, fides.
faithful, fidus; fidélis.
fall, cado.
fall down, procído.
fast, celériter.
father, pater.
fear, to, tímeo.
feel, séntio.
field, ager.
fifth, quintus.
fight, to, pugno.
find, invénio.
fire, ignis.
first, primus.
fish, piscis.
five, quinque.
flee, fúgio.
flower, flos.
fly, volo.
follow, sequor.
food, cibus.
foot, pes.
for, pro; propter; prae.
forgetful, ímmemor.
forgive, dimítto.
forty, quadragínta.
fourth, quartus.
friend, amícus.
frighten, térreo.
from, a *or* ab; ex.
full, plenus.

G.

gate, jánua; óstium; porta.
ghost, spíritus.
gift, donum.
girl, puélla.
give, do.

give thanks, grátias ago.
give up, dedo.
glory, glória.
go, eo.
go away, ábeo; éxeo; discédo.
go before, praéeo; praecedo.
go to meet, occúrro; óbviam eo.
go out, éxeo.
God, Deus.
good, bonus.
grace, grátia.
grant, dono.
great, magnus.
grief, dolor.
guard, custódio.

H.

hail, ave; salve.
hand, manus.
  right hand, déxtera.
hand over, dedo.
handmaid, ancílla.
hang, péndeo.
happy, beátus; felix.
have, hábeo.
head, caput.
heal, curo.
hear, aúdio.
hear graciously, exaúdio.
heart, cor.
heaven, coelum.
help (*n.*), auxílium.
help, to, ádjuvo.
here, hic.
here, to be, adsum.
hide, abscóndo; celo.
hill, mons; collis.
hinder, impédio.
hither, huc.
hold, téneo; hábeo.
holy, sanctus.
home, domus.
  at home, domi.
honour, honor.
hope (*n.*), spes.
hope, to, spero.
horse, equus.
hour, hora.
house, domus.
how, quómodo.
how many, quot.
humble, húmilis.
hungry. to be, esúrio.

I.

idle, otiósus.
if, si.
immediately, statim; extémplo.
in, in.
in vain, vanum; frustra.
intercede, intercédo.
into, in.

J.

joy, gaúdium.
joyful, laetus.
judge, to, judicáre.
just, justus.

K.

keep, custódio.
keep watch, vígilo.
key, clavis.
kill, occído; interfício.
kind, clemens; benígnus.
king, rex.
knee, genu.
knock, pulso.
know, scio; cognósco; novi.
know not, néscio.

L.

lamb, agnus.
land, terra; régio.
  native land, pátria.
law, lex.
lawful, it is, licet.
lead, duco.
lead back, redúco.
leap, sálio.
leave, relínquo; discédo.
lend, cómmodo.
leper, leprósus.
lest, ne.
letter, epístola.
liberate, líbero.
life, vita.
lift up, levo.
light, lux.
little, parvus.
long, longus.
look at, respício.
Lord, Dóminus.
lose, amitto.
loud, magnus; clarus.
love (*n.*), amor.
love, to, amo.

M.

man, homo; vir.
many, multi.
  how many, quot.
martyr, martyr.
Mary, María.
master, magíster; dóminus.
meet, occúrro.
merciful, miséricors; clemens.
mercy, misericórdia.
messenger, núntius.
mindful, memor.
minister, to, minístro.
miserable, miser; tristis.
money, pecúnia.
month, mensis.
mother, mater.
mountain, mons.
mouth, os.
move, móveo.
my, meus.

N.

name, nomen.
nation, gens.
native land, pátria.
naughty, malus.
never, nunquam.
night, nox.
  by night, nocte.
no one, nemo.
not, non; ne.
not yet, nondum.
now, nunc; jam.

O.

often, saepe.
on, in.
once, olim; semel.
  at once, statim.
open, apério.
order, to, júbeo; ímpero.
  in order that, ut.
ought, débeo.
our, noster.
overcome, súpero; vinco.

P.

pain, dolor.
parable, parábola.
Paul, Paulus.
peace, pax.
people, pópulus.
perish, péreo.
Peter, Petrus.
pious, pius.
place (*n.*), locus.
place, to, pono.
play, to, ludo.
plough, to, aro.
point out, monstro.
poor, pauper; miser.
power, potéstas.
praise (*n.*), laus.
praise, to, laudo.
pray, oro; precor.
prayer, orátio; deprecátio.
prepare, paro.
presence of, in, coram.
present (*n.*), donum.
present, to be, adsum.
priest, sacérdos.
proceed, pergo.
protect, prótego.
prudent, prudens.
punish, púnio.
put, pono.

Q.

queen, regína.
quickly, celériter.

R.

read, lego.
receive, suscípio, accípio.
redeemer, redémptor.
refuge, refúgium.
region, régio.
reign, to, regno; rego.
rejoice, gaúdeo.
remain, máneo.
resist, resísto.
rest (*n.*), réquies; quies.
rest, to, quiésco.
return, rédeo; regrédior.
reward, merces; praémium.
right hand, déxtera.
rise, surgo.
rise again, resúrgo.
river, flumen; flúvius.
road, via.
robe, stola.
roll, volvo.
roll back, revólvo.
rolled back, revolútus.
rose, rosa.
rule, to, rego.

S.

sacrifice, ímmolo.
sad, tristis; infelix.
safe, tutus.
saint, sanctus.
salvation, salus; salutáre.
save, servo.
say, dico.
sea, mare; fretum.
see, video.
seek, peto; quaero.
seize, rápio; arrípio.
self, ipse.
send, mitto.
servant, fámulus; minister.
set out, proficíscor.
severely, gráviter.
shadow, umbra.
sheep, ovis.
shepherd, pastor.
shine, lúceo.
ship, navis.
short, brevis.
shout (*n.*), clamor.
shout, to, clamo.
show, monstro; osténdo.
shut, claudo.
sick, aeger.
side, latus.
sight, conspéctus.
sign (*n.*), signum.
sign, to, signo.
sin (*n.*), peccátum.
sin, to, pecco.
sing, canto.
sinner, peccátor.
sister, soror.
sit, sédeo.
six, sex.
slave, servus.
sleep, to, dórmio.
small, parvus.
snow, nix.
soldier, miles.
some . . . others, álii . . . álii.
son, fílius.
sort of, talis.
soul, ánima.
speak, loquor; dico.
stand, sto.
star, stella; sidus.
stay, máneo.
still, adhuc.
stone, lapis; saxum; petra.
story, fábula.
street, via.
suffer, pátior.
supper, cena.
surely, nonne.
surely not, num.
swear, juro.
swift, velox.
sword, gládius.

T.

take, cápio.
take away, tollo.
tall, altus.
task, opus; labor.
teach, dóceo.
tell, narro; dico; júbeo.
tempt, tento.
ten, decem.
tend, custódio.
terrify, térreo.
testimony, testimónium.
thank, to, grátias ago.
thanks, grátiae.
that, ille; is; iste.
  in order that, ut.
there, ibi; illic.
therefore, ígitur; ergo; ídeo.
thief, fur.
think, puto; aéstimo.
thing, res.
third, tértius.
this, hic.
thorn, spina.
thou, tu.
throne, thronus.
thy, tuus.
time, tempus.
timid, tímidus.
tired, fessus.
to, ad.
to-day, hódie.
to-morrow, cras.
tongue, lingua.
touch, tango.
towards, ad; advérsus.
town, castéllum; óppidum.
tree, arbor.
true, verus.
truth, véritas.
turn, convérto.
two, duo.

U.

under, sub.
understand, intélligo.
undertake, suscípio.
unhappy, ínfelix; tristis, miser.
unjust, injústus.
unless, nisi.
upon, super; in.
us, nos.

V.

vain, vanus.
  in vain, in vanum; frustra.
vex, vexo.
victim, hóstia.
virgin, virgo.
virtue, virtus.
voice, vox.

W.

wait for, expécto.
walk, ámbulo.
war, bellum.
warn, móneo.
wash, lavo.
watch (*n.*), vigília.
watch to, vígilo; custódio.
water, aqua.
wave, fluctus.
way, via; modus.
we, nos.
weep, fleo.
well, bene.
what, quid.
when, quando; cum; ubi.
where, ubi.
white, albus; cándidus.
whither, quo.
who, quis; qui.
whole, totus.
whose, cujus.
why, cur; quid.
wicked, malus.
wide, latus.
wing, ala.
wise, sápiens.
wise man, magus.
wisely, sapiénter.
wish, volo.
with, cum.
withdraw, recédo.
without, sine.
woman, fémina; múlier.
wood, silva.
word, verbum.
work (*n.*), opus; labor.
work, to, labóro.
world, mundus; saéculum.
world without end, in saécula saeculórum.
worship, adoro.
worst, péssimus.
worthy, dignus.
wound (*n.*), vulnus.
wound, to, vúlnero.
wounded, vulnerátus.
wretched, miser.
write, scribo.

Y.

year, annus.
yesterday, heri.
yet, tamen; adhuc.
  not yet, nondum.
you, tu; vos.
young man, júvenis.
your, tuus; vester.

INDEX

PAGES

Ablative:
- Absolute - - - 72, 119
- Comparison - - 50, 114
- Time - - - 80, 114, 120
- Use of - - - 11, 114

Accusative:
- And Infinitive - - 78, 115
- Time - - - 80, 113, 120
- Use of - - - - 113

Adjectives:
- Comparison - - 50, 91
- 2nd Declension - 13, 17, 19, 89
- 3rd Declension - - 36, 37, 90

Clauses:
- Adjectival - - - - 116
- Adverbial - - - - 116
- Causal - - - - 117
- Concessive - - - - 118
- Conditional - - 74, 118
- Consecutive - - - 117
- Final - - - - 117
- Noun - - - - 115
- Temporal - - - - 116

Cum following case - - 29

Dative, use of - - 10, 113

Deponent Verbs - - - 62

Eo - - - - 66, 103

Esse - - - 13, 27, 28, 99

Fero - - - - - 103

Fio - - - - - 103

Future Tense:
- Active - - - 26, 27
- Passive - - - - 49

Future-Perfect Tense:
- Active - - - 42, 43, 44
- Passive - - - - 53

Gender of Nouns - - - 16

Genitive, use of - - 10, 113

Gerund - - - 81, 83, 98, 121

Gerundive - - 82, 83, 102, 121

Imperative Mood:
- Active - - - 26, 98
- Passive - - - 64, 102

Imperfect Tense:
- Indicative Active - - 28
- Indicative Passive - - 48
- Subjunctive Active - - 70
- Subjunctive Passive - - 75

Indirect Command - - - 116

Indirect Question - - 75, 116

Indirect Statement - 77, 115

Infinitive Mood:
- Active - - - 14, 77, 98
- Passive - - - 64, 77, 102

Ipse - - - - - 69, 93

Jussive Subjunctive - - 68

Malo - - - - - - 103

Noli with Infinitive - 62, 121

Nolo - - - - - 103

Noun Clauses - - - 115

Numerals - - - 94, 95

Optative Subjunctive - - 68

Participles:
- Future - - - 59, 60, 98
- Past - - - - 52, 102
- Present - - - 59, 98

Perfect Tense:
- Indicative Active 41, 42, 43, 44
- Indicative Passive - - 52
- Subjunctive Active - - 75
- Subjunctive Passive - - 76

PAGES

Pluperfect:
Indicative Active 41, 42, 43, 44
Indicative Passive - - 53
Subjunctive Active - - 73
Subjunctive Passive - - 74

Possum - - - 14, 103

Present Tense:
Indicative Active 8, 12, 13, 23, 24
Indicative Passive - 46, 47
Subjunctive Active - - 68
Subjunctive Passive - - 68

Prepositions - - 21, 104, 105

Prohibitions - - 62, 76, 121

Pronouns:
Demonstrative - - 57, 58, 93
Personal - - - 55, 56, 93
Relative - - 65, 93

PAGES

Questions:
Direct - - - 79, 119
Indirect - - - 75, 116

Semi-Deponent Verbs - - 64

Sequence of Tenses - - 115

Supines - - - - 84, 122

Time - - - 80, 81, 120

Verbs:
In -io - - - 60, 61
Irregular - 45, 46, 54, 103, 106

Volo - - - - - 103

Wishes - - - - - 120

DATE DUE

APR 0 8 1992			

HIGHSMITH #LO-45220

PA 2823 .L7 1930
Lowe, Joyce Egerton, 1892-
Church Latin for beginners

GENER[illegible] SEMINARY
NEW YORK

GENERAL THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY
00015983
C0-BWL-480